AudioCodes High-Definition IP Phones Series

400HD IP Phones Series - Teams Compatible

Version 3.4.6



Gold Communications Skype for Business



Table of Contents

	WEE	E EU Dir	ective		14
	Custo	omer Su	pport		14
	Stay	in the Lo	oop with A	AudioCodes	14
	Abbr	eviation	is and Ter	minology	14
	Docu	mentat	ion Feedb	back	14
	Relat	ed Docu	umentatic	on	15
1	Intro	oductio	n		16
2				ovisioning of IP Phones using DHCP	
2.1 Preparing the Microsoft Skype for Business Environment for IP Phones					
		2.1.1	Making S	Sure DHCP Server Options are Correctly Configured	19
			2.1.1.1	DHCP Option 43	20
			2.1.1.2	VLAN Discovery via DHCP Option 43	20
			2.1.1.3	DHCP Option 120	20
			2.1.1.4	DHCP Option 42	21
			2.1.1.5	DHCP Scope Option	21
		2.1.2	Making S	Sure the DHCP Server is Correctly Configured for Auto Provisioning	
	2.2	Creati	ng a Confi	iguration File for Auto Provisioning	35
		2.2.1	Saving a	Single Phone's Default Configuration as a .cfg File	35
		2.2.2	Configur	ing the Phone According to Requirements	
		2.2.3	Save the	Phone's Newly Configured Settings as a .cfg File	
		2.2.4	Creating	a Delta Configuration .cfg File	
		2.2.5	Loading	the Delta .cfg File to Another Phone, Signing In, Testing	
			2.2.5.1	Loading the Delta .cfg File to Another Phone	
			2.2.5.2	Signing In to the Phone	
			2.2.5.3	Testing the Phone	
			2.2.5.4	Changing the Order of the Sign-In Method	
			2.2.5.5	Allowing Users to Display Phone # or Ext # in Phone Screen	
			2.2.5.6	Forcing Sign-in with PIN Code	
			2.2.5.7	Online Sign-in through Microsoft's Cloud PBX	
			2.2.5.8	Disabling AutoDiscover Web Service Protocol	
	2.3	Copyir	ng the Cor	nfiguration File to the Provisioning Server	
	2.4	Trigge	ring Auto	matic Provisioning	40
	2.5	Troubl	eshooting	g Automatic Provisioning	41
		2.5.1	Using the	e Phone Screen	
	2.6	Device	Manage	r	43
	2.7	Audio	codes Dev	vice Manager Validation	
		2.7.1	Introduc	tion	
		2.7.2	Prerequi	sites	

		2.7.3	Overview	
		2.7.4	Existing Root CA Files in IP Phone	
		2.7.5	Certification Details Dialog	
3	Man	ual Con	iguration of a Single IP Phone	47
	3.1	Config	ring Network Connections	
		3.1.1	Configuring LAN Connection Type	
		3.1.2	Configuring LAN Port / PC Port	
		3.1.3	Configuring VLAN Settings	
	3.2	Config	ring Personal Settings	
		3.2.1	Configuring Language	
	3.3	Config	ring Function and Programmable Keys	53
		3.3.1	Configuring a Function Key	
			3.3.1.1 Configuring a Function Key for	Speed Dialing55
			3.3.1.2 445HD, 450HD, C450HD and R	.50
			3.3.1.3 Configuring a Function Key for	Making a Discreet Call 57
		3.3.2	Configuring Programmable Keys	
		3.3.3	Configuring Programmable Softkeys for a	Customized UI Experience 60
		3.3.4 Call Par		low Paging during an Ongoing Call Call Hold
		3.3.5	Configuring Tones	
			3.3.5.1 Configuring CPT Regional Settir	gs
			3.3.5.2 Uploading Ring Tones	
		3.3.6	Configuring Phone Screen Settings	
		3.3.7	Configuring a Distinctive Ring Tone	
	3.4	Config	ring VoIP Settings	
		3.4.1	Configuring TLS/SSL over SIP	
		3.4.2	Configuring TLS/SSL over SIPE	
		3.4.3	Configuring an Outbound Proxy	
		3.4.4		via HTTP Proxy Support72
		3.4.5	Configuring Dialing	
			3.4.5.1 Adjusting the DTMF Level	
				Speed Dial to an Ext. behind an IVR
				ce
		3.4.6		
		3.4.7		
		3.4.8		Consultative Transfer76
		3.4.9		
		3.4.10		у
		3.4.11	-	
		3.4.12	Disabling Audial Call Waiting Indication	

	3.4.13	Disabling	Call Forward	
	3.4.14	Configuri	ng Busy on Busy	80
	3.4.15	Configuri	ng Disconnect if Handset On-Hooked after Putting Call on Hold	80
	3.4.16	Configuri	ng Media Streaming	81
		3.4.16.1	Configuring Quality of Service	81
		3.4.16.2	Configuring Codecs	
		3.4.16.3	Configuring Real Time Protocol (RTP) Port Range	83
		3.4.16.4	Configuring RTCP Extended Report	
		3.4.16.5	Configuring Media Bypass	85
	3.4.17	Enabling	Paging	86
	3.4.18	Enabling	Barge-in	87
	3.4.19	Configuri	ng the VocaNOM Service	88
	3.4.20	Configuri	ng a Dedicated Voicemail Server	89
	3.4.21	Securing	Voicemail Access by PIN Code Authentication	
	3.4.22	Setting u	p a Cloud User's Voicemail / MWI	
		3.4.22.1	Enabling Unified Messaging	
		3.4.22.2	Troubleshooting	
3.5	Config	uring Secu	ırity	97
	3.5.1	Using the	Encryption Tool	
		3.5.1.1	Encrypting Configuration Files	
	3.5.2	Encryptin	g Passwords in Configuration File	
	3.5.3	Managing	g Security Certificates	
		3.5.3.1	Loading the Root CA Certificate to the Phone	
		3.5.3.2	Loading the Client Certificate to the Phone	
		3.5.3.3	Enabling Server-side Authentication (Mutual Authentication)	100
		3.5.3.4	Generating a Certificate Signing Request	101
	3.5.4	Server Ce	ertificate Validation for Secured HTTPS Communications over SSL	101
	3.5.5	Configuri	ng 802.1X Authentication	102
		3.5.5.1	Using the Phone Screen	102
		3.5.5.2	EAP MD5 Mode	102
		3.5.5.3	EAP TLS Mode	102
	3.5.6	Using the	Configuration File	103
		3.5.6.1	EAP MD5 Mode	103
		3.5.6.2	EAP TLS Mode	103
	3.5.7	Configuri	ng HTTPS	
	3.5.8	Supporte	d Encryption Ciphers and TLS Version	
	3.5.9	Support f	or Enterprise HTTP/S Proxy Servers	105
3.6	Config	uring Adva	anced Applications	106
	3.6.1	Wi-Fi Cap	pability	106
	3.6.2	Bluetooth	n	106
	3.6.3	Dynamic	URL Provisioning	106

Contents

		3.6.4	Configur	ng Date and Time	109
			3.6.4.1	Configuring NTP Server	112
			3.6.4.2	Configuring NTP Server via DHCP	113
		3.6.5	Configuri	ng Contacts (LDAP)	115
		3.6.6	Configuri	ng T9	117
		3.6.7	Configuri	ng the Caller Name to be Displayed	117
4	Conf	iguring	Microso	ft Skype for Business Features	118
	4.1	Micros	oft Scree	n Theme	118
	4.2	Config	uring Pho	ne Status and User Status Timeouts	118
	4.3	Park Ca	all		118
	4.4	Music	on Hold (I	МоН)	118
	4.5	Config	uring Tim	eouts for Presence Status Changes	120
	4.6	Group	Call Picku	р (GCP)	
	4.7				
	4.8			pe for Business Server for SRTP / TLS	
	4.9	-		Firmware from the Skype for Business Server	
		4.9.1	-	Automatic Firmware Updates from the Server	
		4.9.2	0	Automatic Firmware Updates from the Server using Configuration F	
		4.9.3	_	Downloading Firmware to the Phone from the Server	
	4.10	Enablir		Lock	
			-	Users Other Capabilities besides Emergency Calls if Phones Lock	
			_	Allowing Users to use the Phone's Handset	
			4.10.1.2		
			4.10.1.3	Allowing Users to Answer Second-Hand (SLA Delegation) Incomir	ng Calls 126
	4.11	Exchan	ige Servei	· Features	126
		4.11.1	Configuri	ng Calendar Displayed in the Phone's Screen	127
		4.11.2	Configuri	ng Meeting Reminders Popping up in the Phone's Screen	128
		4.11.3	Visual Vo	icemail	128
		4.11.4	Skype for	Business 'Favorites' Contacts & Outlook Contacts	129
	4.12	Better	Together	over Ethernet	129
		4.12.1	BToE Fire	wall Ports	130
		4.12.2	Installing	the BToE PC Application	130
		4.12.3	Distribut	ing the BToE PC Application msi Package	138
		4.12.4	Making S	ure BToE is Correctly Installed	139
		4.12.5	Enabling	BToE for Online Users in the Skype for Business Server	139
		4.12.6	_	ng the BToE TCP Port	
		4.12.7	Automat	ically Pairing the BToE PC/Laptop Application with the IP Phone	141
		4.12.8		Pairing the BToE PC/Laptop Application with the Phone	
			4.12.8.1	Support for Citrix XenDesktop VDI	
			4.12.8.2	Manually Generating a Pair Code	142

	4.12.8.3 Connecting the IP Phone with the BToE PC/Laptop Application	142
	4.12.9 Connecting the Skype for Business Client with the IP Phone	145
	4.12.10 Making Sure IP Phone/ Skype for Business Client are Paired	146
	4.12.10.1 Making Sure the Skype for Business Client is Paired	146
	4.12.10.2 Making Sure the Phone is Paired with the PC/Laptop	146
	4.12.11 Configuring Mode of Operation for Phone-PC Pairing	146
	4.12.12 Pairing Across Different Subnets	147
	4.12.13 Troubleshooting	148
4.13	Device Duo	148
	4.13.1 Benefits	148
	4.13.2 Installing the Device Duo on the PC	148
	4.13.3 Making Sure Device Duo is Correctly Installed	152
	4.13.4 Pairing the Device Duo Application with the IP Phone	152
	4.13.4.1 Pairing Code	153
	4.13.4.2 Automatically Pairing the RXV100Hub with the RX50	155
	4.13.4.3 Automatic Pairing using PC Port	157
	4.13.5 Configuring Mode of Operation for Phone-PC Pairing	158
	4.13.6 Pairing Across Different Subnets	159
	4.13.7 Troubleshooting	159
4.14	Boss Admin	160
	4.14.1 Viewing Admin Lines on Boss's Phone	163
	4.14.2 Viewing Boss's Line on Admin's Phone	163
	4.14.3 Configuring Boss Privacy Mode	163
4.15	Enabling the Delegated Line Feature	164
	4.15.1 Configuring Boss Admin Delegated Line	165
	4.15.1.1 Configuring Multiple Points of Presence (MPOPs)	165
	4.15.1.2 Configuring Boss-Admin Sidecar Functionality	165
4.16	Configuring a Distinctive Ring on the Phone of Each Boss	166
4.17	Configuring Phones to Operate in an OVR Deployment	166
4.18	Disabling Local 3-Way Conferencing Capability	167
4.19	Blocking All Phone Users from Signing Out	
4.20	Enabling HotDesking	
4.21	Uploading Logs to Microsoft Server for Support Purposes	
4.22	Enabling an IP Phone Voice Quality Check	
4.23	Signing in / out with the Web Interface	
4.24	Signing in and Authenticating with Microsoft's Cloud PBX	
4.25	Initiating a Skype for Business Server Based Phone Conference	
4.26	Provisioning the Server for Downloading Contacts Pictures	
	4.26.1 Disabling Contacts Pictures	
4.27	Enabling QoE Reports to be Sent to Microsoft's SQL Server	175

	4.28	Enabli	ng Malicious Call Tracing	176
	4.29	Disabli	ing the C450HD IP Phone Screen Saver	
	4.30	Regist	ering the Phone on Azure Cloud	
5	Main	itenano	ce	
	5.1	Upgra	ding Phone Firmware	178
	5.2	Enabli	ng/Disabling Device Update	179
	5.3	Admin	istration	
		5.3.1	Managing Users	
		5.3.2	Managing the Web Login Sign-in Option	180
		5.3.3	Allowing / Disallowing Management via the Web Interface	181
		5.3.4	Restoring Defaults	181
		5.3.5	Restarting the Phone	
	5.4	Enabli	ng Remote Management	
		5.4.1	Enabling Telnet Access	181
		5.4.2	Enabling SSH Access	
6	Statu	is and l	Performance	
	6.1	Viewir	g Network Status	
		6.1.1	Viewing LAN Status	183
		6.1.2	Viewing Port Mode Status	183
		6.1.3	Viewing 802.1X Status	183
	6.2	Viewir	ng VoIP Status	
		6.2.1	Viewing Phone Status	
		6.2.2	Viewing Line Status	
		6.2.3	Viewing Call Information	
	6.3	Viewir	ng Call History	
	6.4	Viewir	ng Phone Model / Firmware Version	
		6.4.1	Viewing from the Phone's Screen	
		6.4.2	Viewing Release Information	186
7	Diag	nostics		
	7.1	Loggin	g	
		7.1.1	Analyzing and Debugging Traffic using Syslog	187
		7.1.2	Analyzing and Debugging Traffic using Syslog	
	7.2	Enabli	ng Recording to Debug Voice	
	7.3	Downl	oading a Tombstone Dump	190
	7.4	Activat	ting Core Dump	191
	7.5	Monite	pring: Traceroute	192
	7.6	Enabli	ng Port Mirroring	
8	Trou	blesho	oting	
	8.1		e to Sign in to Skype for Business using Username/Password	

	8.2	Unable to Authenticate User using PIN	193
	8.3	IP Phone Fails Registration Process	193
	8.4	How to Verify CA Certificate is Trusted / Authorized by IP Phone	194
	8.5	Invalid Time Server	194
	8.6	Invalid Time Offset	194
	8.7	General Corrective Actions	195
		8.7.1 Restoring Phone Defaults	195
		8.7.1.1 Restoring Factory Defaults from the Phone Screen	195
		8.7.1.2 Restoring Factory Defaults from the Web Interface	195
		8.7.2 Loading the Configuration File Manually	196
		8.7.3 Recovering Firmware	197
		8.7.4 Restarting the Phone	
		8.7.4.1 Restarting the Phone from the Screen	
		8.7.4.2 Restarting the Phone from the Web Interface	
Α	Insta	lling the Expansion Module	199
	A.1	Installation Procedure	199
		A.1.1 Step 1: Place Phone and Module on a Table	199
		A.1.2 Step 2: Invert and Unscrew Three Screws	200
		A.1.3 Step 3: Remove Rubber Cover and Connect	200
		A.1.4 Step 4: Attach the Panel	
		A.1.5 Step 5: Secure the Side Panel	
		A.1.6 Step 6: Secure the Connection of the Two Units	
		A.1.7 Step 7: Mount Phone on Base Stand, Expansion Module on Base Stand	202
В	Alter	native Automatic Provisioning Methods	203
	B.1	Static DNS Record Method	203
	B.2	AudioCodes' HTTPS Redirect Server	205
		B.2.1.1 Redirection Process	206
С	Reco	vering AudioCodes' IP Phone	207
	C.1	Identifying that the Phone is in Recovery Mode	207
	C.2	Making Sure the Phone is in Recovery Mode	208
	C.3	Recovering the Phone	209
	C.4	Make Sure the Phone is Downloading the Image File	211
		C.4.1 Making Sure Using Wireshark	211
		C.4.2 Making Sure Using tftpd64	213
		C.4.3 Making Sure Using the Phone Screen	213
D	Hudo	lle Room Solution (HRS)	214
E	Migra	ating from Skype for Business to Teams Environment	216
	E.1	Signing in with Web Sign-in (Cloud)	216
	E.2	Signing Out and then Signing In Again	218

F	Swite	ching Devices from Teams Compatible to Teams Native Mode219				
	F.1	Prerequisites				
	F.2	Upload	l Software	Priles to the Device Manager		
		F.2.1	Enable M	D5 File Uploading to the Device Manager		
		F.2.2	Upload T	eams Compatible Firmware File	220	
		F.2.3	Upload T	eams Native Firmware	222	
		F.2.4	Upload N	ID5 File	222	
		F.2.5	Verify File	es Successful Upload	222	
	F.3	Add Pa	rameters	to Provision in the Teams Phone Template		
	F.4	Upgrade the Phone to Teams Compatible Transition Firmware224				
	F.5	Generate Configuration on the Phone224				
	F.6	Verify S	Successfu	Upgrade to Teams Native		
G	Speci	cifications				
	G.1	SIP Sup	port (RFC	, Headers)		
		G.1.1	SIP Comp	liance Tables		
			G.1.1.1	SIP Methods		
			G.1.1.2	SIP Headers		

List of Figures

Figure 2-1: Setting up Automatic Provisioning	. 18
Figure 2-2: DHCP Server Options	. 19
Figure 2-3: DHCP Options Assigned to IPv4 Addresses	. 21
Figure 2-4: Defining User Classes	. 22
Figure 2-5: DHCP User Classes	
Figure 2-6: New Class	
Figure 2-7: Packet Bytes Window	
Figure 2-8: DHCP User Classes	
Figure 2-9: Set Predefined Options	
Figure 2-10: Predefined Options and Values	
Figure 2-11: Option Type – Add AudioCodes 160 Option	
Figure 2-12: Predefined Options and Values – Add IP Phone Management Server Location	
Figure 2-13: 'Scope Leased' Folder - Configure Options	
Figure 2-14: Configure Options 1	
Figure 2-15: Configure Options 2	
Figure 2-16: Server Options	
Figure 2-17: Scope Options Created [Illustrative Purposes Only]	
Figure 2-18: New Policy	28
Figure 2-19: NEW Folicy Configuration Wizard – Policy Name	
Figure 2-20: DHCP Policy Configuration Wizard - Add	
Figure 2-20: Drice Foncy configuration wizard - Add	
Figure 2-22: Policy Conditions	
Figure 2-22: Policy Settings – IP Address Range for the Policy	
Figure 2-24: Policy Settings – Available Options	
Figure 2-24: Policy Settings – Available Options	
Figure 2-26: DHCP GUI - Policy Name: AudioCodes IPP User Class	
Figure 2-27: Web Interface - Configuration File	
Figure 2-23: Web Interface – Loading a New Configuration File	
Figure 3-1: HTTP Proxy Functioning	
Figure 3-2: Exchange Admin Center - Unified Messaging	
Figure 3-3: Setting up a Dial Plan	
Figure 3-4: New Dial Plan: URI Type = SIP URI	
Figure 3-5: Dial Plan: Rules and Settings	
Figure 3-6: Edit	
Figure 3-7: Enabling UM for Users	
Figure 3-8: Enabling UM	
Figure 3-9: Browse to the UM Dial Plan	. 94 . 95
Figure 3-10: User's SIP Address and/or Extension Number, and PIN Figure 3-11: Troubleshooting – Protected Voice Mail	
Figure 3-12: Web Interface – Certificate Signing Request	
Figure 4-1: Skype for Business Server - Edit Trunk Configuration - Global	
Figure 4-2: Microsoft Server Page from which the Firmware Version is Updated	
Figure 4-3: Web Interface – Automatic Provisioning	
Figure 4-4: InstallShield Wizard – Preparing to Install	
Figure 4-5: Welcome to the InstallShield Wizard.	
Figure 4-6: License Agreement	
Figure 4-7: License Agreement	
Figure 4-8: Destination Folder	
Figure 4-9: Change Current Destination Folder	
Figure 4-10: Ready to Install	
Figure 4-11: Installing AudioCodes Better2Gether	
Figure 4-12: InstallShield Wizard Completed	
Figure 4-13: AudioCodes Icon in Taskbar	136

Figure 4-14: Control Panel>Programs>AudioCodes Better2Gether	
Figure 4-15: Computer Management > Services and Applications	137
Figure 4-16: Device Manager > AudioCodes B2GoE USB Driver	137
Figure 4-17: Popup Menu	139
Figure 4-18: About AC BToE	139
Figure 4-19: TCP Port	140
Figure 4-20: AC BToE TCP Port	140
Figure 4-21: Popup Menu	142
Figure 4-22: Phone Pairing	142
Figure 4-23: AC BToE Failed Indication	143
Figure 4-24: AC BToE is Connected Indication	143
Figure 4-25: Popup Menu: 'Disconnect' Enabled, 'Phone Pairing' Disabled	143
Figure 4-26: BToE Disconnected	
Figure 4-27: Popup Menu: BToE Disconnected	
Figure 4-28: Start > Programs > AudioCodes > BToE Controller	144
Figure 4-29: Sign-in Request Prompt	
Figure 4-30: Web Interface - Configuration File	
Figure 4-31: Popup Menu	
Figure 4-32: About AudioCodes Device Duo	
Figure 4-33: Web Interface - Configuration File	
Figure 4-34: Skype for Business Client – Call Forwarding Settings	
Figure 4-35: Skype for Business Client - Edit my delegate members	
Figure 4-36: Skype for Business Client – Call Forwarding – Add Delegates	
Figure 4-37: Skype for Business Client – Call Forwarding – Added Delegate - Receive Calls	
Figure 4-38: Skype for Business Client – Call Forwarding – Simultaneously ring - My Delegates	
Figure 4-39: Sign-in – Content Blocked Page	
Figure 4-40: Sign-in – Windows Security Prompt	
Figure 4-41: Windows Security Prompt	
Figure 4-42: Sign-in with PIN Code	
Figure 4-43: Sign-in with Username & Password	
Figure 5-1: Manual Firmware Upgrade	
Figure 6-1: Web Interface - LAN Information	
Figure 6-2: Web Interface - Port Mode Status.	
Figure 6-3: Web Interface - Port Mode Status.	
Figure 6-4: Web Interface - 802.1X Status	
Figure 6-5: Web Interface - Filone Status	
Figure 6-6: Web Interface - Call Information	
Figure 6-7: Web Interface - Call History	
Figure 6-8: Web Interface - System Information - Release Information	
Figure 7-1: Web Interface - Crash Dump	
Figure 7-2: Web Interface - Monitoring - Traceroute	
Figure 8-1: Web Interface - Restore Defaults	
Figure 8-2: Confirm Restore to Factory Defaults	
Figure 8-3: Web Interface - Configuration File	
Figure 8-4: Web Interface - Load New Configuration File	
Figure 8-5: Web Interface - Restart System	
Figure 8-6: Confirmation Prompt	
Figure A-7: HTTPS Redirect Server Directing Phones to Provisioning Server	
Figure B-1: Identifying Recovery Mode	
Figure B-2: Verifying Recovery Mode in Wireshark	
Figure B-3: Source Ethernet MAC Address in Wireshark Identical to Phone Base's	
Figure B-4: Recovering the Phone - Configure the PC NIC to which the Phone is Connected	
Figure B-5: Make Sure with Wireshark that the Phone is Downloading Phone .img File	
Figure B-6: Verifying .img File Download with Wireshark – Filtering by TFTP	
Figure B-7: Verifying .img File Download using tftpd64	213

Figure B-8: Verifying .img File Download using tftpd64	213
Figure B-9: Verifying .img File Download from the Phone Screen	213
Figure C-10: System Information page	214
Figure C-11: Release Information page	214
Figure C-12: Personal Settings (Left HRS Right 450HD and C450HD)	214
Figure C-13: UI Theme	215

List of Tables

Table 2-1: DHCP Option 43 Configuration Reference	. 20
Table 2-2: DHCP Option 43, Sub-Option 010, Configuration Reference	. 20
Table 2-3: DHCP Option 120 Configuration Reference	
Table 2-4: DHCP Option 120 Configuration Reference	
Table 2-5: DHCP User Class Entry for Each AudioCodes Phone Model Deployed	
Table 2-6: Forcing Sign-In with PIN Code	
Table 2-7: Online Sign-In	
Table 2-8: AutoDiscover Web Service Protocol	
Table 2-9: Troubleshooting Deployment Problems	
Table 2-10: OVOC Server Parameters	
Table 3-1: Network Settings – Static IP	
Table 3-2: Network Settings - Automatic IP (DHCP)	
Table 3-3: Port Settings	
Table 3-4: VLAN Parameters Description	
Table 3-5: Language Display Parameters	
Table 3-6: Function / Programmable Keys Parameters	
Table 3-7: Speed Dial Parameter	
Table 3-8: Discreet Call Parameters	
Table 3-9: Programmable Key Parameters in the Configuration File Table 3-9: Programmable Key Parameters in the Configuration File	
Table 3-10: Configuring a PSK for Paging during an Ongoing Call Call Hold Call Park Table 3-10: Configuring a PSK for Paging during an Ongoing Call Call Hold Call Park	
Table 3-11: Regional Parameters	
Table 3-12: Ring Tone File URI in the Configuration File Table 3-12: Ring Tone File URI in the Configuration File	
Table 3-13: Ring Tones Parameter in the Configuration File	
Table 3-14: Screen Contrast Parameters [445HD, 450HD, C450HD and RX50]	
Table 3-15: Distinctive Ring Tone Parameters	
Table 3-16: TLS/SSL over SIP Parameters	
Table 3-17: TLS/SSL over SIPE Parameters	
Table 3-18: Proxy and Registrar Parameters	
Table 3-19: HTTP Proxy - Parameter	
Table 3-20: Automatic Dialing Parameters	
Table 3-21: Automatic Dialing Parameters	
Table 3-22: Pause Dialing	
Table 3-23: Default Audio Device Parameter	
Table 3-24: Enabling Voice Dialing	. 75
Table 3-25: Disable Microphone Parameter	. 76
Table 3-26: Changing TRANSFER Key Functionality	. 76
Table 3-27: Semi-Consultative Transfer Parameter	. 77
Table 3-28: Blind Transfer Softkey Parameter	. 77
Table 3-29: EHS Parameter	. 78
Table 3-30: Call Waiting Audial Indication Parameter	. 79
Table 3-31: Call Forward Parameter	. 79
Table 3-32: Call Forward Parameter	. 80
Table 3-33: Disconnect if Handset On-Hooked after Call Put on Hold	. 80
Table 3-34: QoS Parameters	. 81
Table 3-35: Codec Parameters	. 82
Table 3-36: Media Streaming - RTP Port Range	. 83
Table 3-37: RTCP_XR Parameter	. 84
Table 3-38: Paging Parameters	. 86
Table 3-39: Paging – Allow Barge In	. 87
Table 3-40: Voice-Dialing Parameter Descriptions	
Table 3-41: Dedicated Voicemail Server - Parameters	
Table 3-42: Securing Voicemail Access by PIN Code Authentication Parameter	
Table 3-43: Root CA Certificate Parameters	

Table 3-44: Client Certificate Parameters	99
Table 3-45: Server-side Authentication	. 100
Table 3-46: Server Certificate Validation for Secured HTTPS Communications over SSL	. 101
Table 3-47: EAP MD5 Parameters	. 103
Table 3-48: EAP TLS Parameters	. 103
Table 3-49: HTTPS Parameter	. 104
Table 3-50: Configuring HTTP/S Server	. 105
Table 3-51: Configuring Automatic Provisioning Performed by DHCP	. 106
Table 3-52: Daylight Saving Time Parameters	. 109
Table 3-53: NTP Server Parameters	. 112
Table 3-54: NTP Server and GMT Parameters	. 113
Table 3-55: Time Zones	. 114
Table 3-56: LDAP Parameters	. 115
Table 3-57: T9 Parameter	. 117
Table 3-58: Caller Name to be Displayed	. 117
Table 4-1: Presence Status Timeout Parameters	
Table 4-2: Automatic Firmware Update from Skype for Business Server - Configuration File	. 123
Table 4-3: PIN Lock Parameter	
Table 4-4: Inband Provisioning Parameter 'DisableHandsetOnLockedMachine'	. 125
Table 4-5: Local Phone Parameter 'AllowCallsInLockState'	
Table 4-6: Local Phone Parameter 'AnswerDelegateIncomingCalls'	
Table 4-7: Microsoft's Exchange Calendar	
Table 4-8: Calendar Meeting Reminders	
Table 4-9: Maximum Number of Outlook Contacts to Display in the Phone's Screen	
Table 4-10: Pairing Mode Parameter	
Table 4-11: Pairing Mode Parameter	
Table 4-12: Boss Privacy Mode Parameter	
Table 4-13: Distinctive Ring Tone Parameter	
Table 4-14: Removing Local 3-Way Conferencing Capability from Users - Parameter	
Table 4-15: Blocking All Users from Signing out - Parameter	
Table 4-16: Inband Provisioning Parameters for Downloading Contacts Pictures to Phones	
Table 4-17: Local Phone Parameters for Downloading Contact Pictures	
Table 4-18: Enabling QoE Reports using the Configuration File	
Table 4-19: Disabling the C450HD IP Phone Screen Saver	
Table 4-20: Enabling the Client ID using the Configuration File	
Table 5-1: Automatically Checking for Updates Using the Configuration File	
Table 5-2: Administrator account - Username and Password	
Table 5-3: User account - Username and Password	
Table 5-4: Telnet Parameters	
Table 7-1: Syslog Parameters	
Table 7-2: Packet Recording Parameters	
Table 7-3: Crash Dump Parameters	
Table 7-4: Core Dump Parameter	
Table 7-5: Port Mirroring Parameters	
Table B-1: Static DNS Record Parameters	
Table C-1: Configuring tftpd64 Settings	
Table G-1: Supported IETF RFCs	
Table G-2: Supported SIP Methods	
Table G-3: Supported SIP Headers	. 228

Notice

Information contained in this document is believed to be accurate and reliable at the time of printing. However, due to ongoing product improvements and revisions, AudioCodes cannot guarantee accuracy of printed material after the Date Published nor can it accept responsibility for errors or omissions. Updates to this document can be downloaded from https://www.audiocodes.com/library/technical-documents.

This document is subject to change without notice.

Date Published: August-22-2021

WEEE EU Directive

Pursuant to the WEEE EU Directive, electronic and electrical waste must not be disposed of with unsorted waste. Please contact your local recycling authority for disposal of this product.

Customer Support

Customer technical support and services are provided by AudioCodes or by an authorized AudioCodes Service Partner. For more information on how to buy technical support for AudioCodes products and for contact information, please visit our website at https://www.audiocodes.com/services-support/maintenance-and-support.

Stay in the Loop with AudioCodes



Abbreviations and Terminology

Each abbreviation, unless widely used, is spelled out in full when first used.

Documentation Feedback

AudioCodes continually strives to produce high quality documentation. If you have any comments (suggestions or errors) regarding this document, please fill out the Documentation Feedback form on our Web site at https://online.audiocodes.com/documentation-feedback.

Related Documentation

Document Name
445HD IP Phone Quick Guide – Teams Compatible
445HD IP Phone User's Manual - Teams Compatible
450HD IP Phone Quick Guide - Teams Compatible
450HD IP Phone User's Manual - Teams Compatible
C450HD IP Phone Quick Guide - Teams Compatible
C450HD IP Phone User's Manual - Teams Compatible
HRS Conference Device Quick Guide - User's Manual - Teams Compatible
HRS Conference Device User's Manual - Teams Compatible
RX50 Conference Phone Quick Guide - Teams Compatible
RX50 Conference Phone User's Manual - Teams Compatible
Device Manager Administrator's Manual
One Voice Operations Center (OVOC) IOM Manual
OVOC User's Manual

1 Introduction

This *Administrator's Manual* is intended for administrators responsible for provisioning AudioCodes' 400HD Series of IP Phones deployed with Microsoft Skype for Business in an enterprise network.



AudioCodes Skype for Business devices support Microsoft 'Teams Compatible'.

The document describes the new features and known and resolved restraints for AudioCodes' 400HD Series of IP Phones, including:

- 445HD, 450HD, C450HD IP Phones
- RX50 Conference Phone
- Huddle Room Solution (HRS)

AudioCodes' 445HD-R IP Phone without the Expansion Module (sidecar) and BLFs + 12 SDs (phone models UC445HDG-R and UC445HDEPSG-R) are identical to the 445HD IP phone but do not feature the Expansion Module (sidecar) nor the BLFs + 12 Speed Dials.

AudioCodes IP phones are based on AudioCodes' proprietary High Definition (HD) voice technology, providing clarity and a rich audio experience in Voice-over-IP (VoIP) calls.

The phones are fully-featured telephones that provide voice communication over an IP network, allowing you to place and receive phone calls, put calls on hold, transfer calls, etc.

The phones offer different automatic provisioning options.

This manual shows how to automatically provision a mass deployment of AudioCodes IP phones using DHCP.

2 Automatic Mass Provisioning of IP Phones using DHCP

This section shows how to automatically provision a mass deployment of AudioCodes IP phones in a Microsoft Skype for Business environment.



Instead of using DHCP as the automatic provisioning method, you can alternatively use Static DNS Record or SIP SUBSCRIBE and NOTIFY messages.

As DHCP clients, AudioCodes IP phones can be automatically provisioned with the following files:

- Configuration file (.cfg)
- Firmware file (.img)

These files can be placed on any of these three provisioning server types:

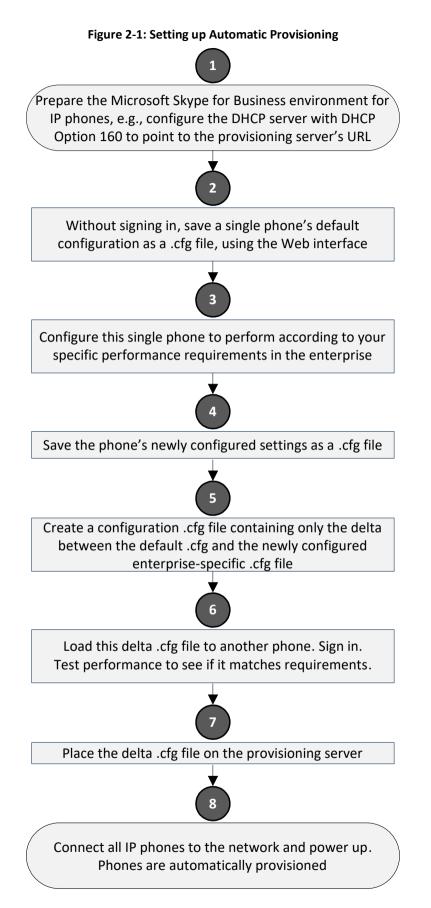
- HTTP/S server
- TFTP server
- FTP server

Figure 2-1 summarizes the steps required for setting up mass provisioning of IP phones in a Microsoft environment.

These steps are described in detail in the following sections.



Automatic mass provisioning of IP phones using the DHCP provisioning method can alternatively be performed from the phones' management server. For detailed information, see the *Device Manager Administrator's Manual*.



2.1 Preparing the Microsoft Skype for Business Environment for IP Phones

Before plugging in and playing the phones in an enterprise's Microsoft Skype for Business environment, make sure the environment is ready for them.

To prepare it for phones, you must set up:

- 1. Front End Skype for Business Server
- 2. Domain Controller, including:
 - a. Active Directory, LDAP service
 - b. DNS service
 - c. DHCP service
 - d. NTP service (optional)
- 3. Unified Messaging Server (optional)
- 4. Mediant[™] Gateway
- 5. SBA Server (optional)

For details, refer to Microsoft's website at:

http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/gg425854%28v=ocs.14%29.aspx

2.1.1 Making Sure DHCP Server Options are Correctly Configured

This section shows how to ensure that your enterprise's DHCP server options are correctly configured and that the network environment is ready for deployment of IP phones.

For detailed Microsoft instructions on setting up DHCP for the IP phone, see: http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/gg398369(v=ocs.14).aspx

UTIOF	Option Name	Vendor *	Value
 DHCP ac-dc04.acentraldom.ac3pip.com IPv4 Scope [10.59.0.0] 3pip Address Pool Address Leases Reservations [10.59.0.102] 420HD-00908F38C17 [10.59.0.103] 320HD-00908F158E02: [10.59.0.103] 320HD-00908F158E02: [10.59.0.101] 420HD-00908F158E06: [10.59.0.200] AUTO PC 2 Scope [192.168.80.0] 192.168.80.0 Scope [192.168.81.0] 192.168.81.0 Scope [192.168.82.0] 192.168.82.0 Server Options 	Option Name 001 UCtdentifier 002 URLScheme 003 WebServerFigdn 004 WebServerPort 005 CertProvRelPath 1: 003 Router 002 Time Offset 004 Time Server 006 DNS Servers 015 DNS Domain Name	MSUCClient MSUCClient MSUCClient MSUCClient Standard Standard Standard Standard	4d 53 2d 55 43 2d 43 6c 69 65 6e 74 68 74 74 70 73 41 43 6c 79 6e 63 70 6f 6f 6c 2e 41 34 34 33 2f 43 65 72 74 50 72 6f 76 2f 43 65 10.59.0.1 0x1c20 10.59.0.20, 10.59.0.21 10.59.0.21, 192.168.81.21
	006 DNS Servers		

Figure 2-2: DHCP Server Options

Make sure:

- DHCP Option 43 (comprising 001-005 in the figure above) is correctly configured (see Section 2.1.1.1 on page 20 below)
- DHCP Option 120 is correctly configured (see Section 2.1.1.3 on page 20 below)
- DHCP Option 42 is correctly configured (see Section 2.1.1.4 on page 21 below)

Correct configuration of these three is critically important. The other DHCP options shown in the figure above are also important but are less susceptible to inaccuracies than these.

2.1.1.1 DHCP Option 43

Option 43 comprises the five sub-options 001-005 shown in the figure above and in the table below. These point the phone to the location of the Certificate Provisioning service on the Skype for Business server. Use the table as a reference to make sure each sub-option is correctly configured. Sub-option 010 is shown in the next section (VLAN Discovery via DHCP).

Refer also to http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/gg398088(v=ocs.14).aspx

Sub-Option Number	Sub-Option Name	ASCII Value (example)
001	UCIdentifier	MS-UC-Client
002	URLScheme	https
003	WebServerFQDN	skypeforbusinessserver.domain.com
004	WebServerPort	443
005	CertProvRelPath /CertProv/CertProvisioningService	

Table 2-1: DHCP Option 43 Configuration Reference

2.1.1.2 VLAN Discovery via DHCP Option 43

Option 43 comprises the five sub-options 001-005 shown in the previous section, as well as sub-option 010, shown in the table below. Sub-option 010 is used to specify a voice VLAN. It is *not mandatory*.

Refer also to http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/gg398088(v=ocs.14).aspx

Table 2-2: DHCP Option 43, Sub-Option 010, Configuration Reference

Sub-Option Number	Sub-Option Name	ASCII Value (example)
010	VoiceVLAN	Valid values: 1-4094

2.1.1.3 DHCP Option 120

Option 120, which includes the Skype for Business Server's fully qualified domain name (FQDN) as shown in the table below, is required for the certification authority (CA) pool Registrar. Use the table as reference to make sure Option 120 is correctly configured.

Table 2-3: DHCP Option 120 Configuration Reference

Option Number	Option Name	ASCII Value (example)
120	UCSipServer	skypeforbusinessserver.domain.com

2.1.1.4 DHCP Option 42

Option 42 specifies the servers that provide NTP / SNTP for the network. Make sure NTP server IP addresses are correct, as shown in the table below.

Option Number	Option Name	String (example)
42	NTP Servers	10.59.0.20, 10.59.0.21

2.1.1.5 DHCP Scope Option

Use a DHCP Scope Option if vendor phones other than those of AudioCodes are deployed in the same enterprise as AudioCodes' phones and a DHCP Option cohabitation issue consequently occurs.

This section shows how to configure provisioning of AudioCodes phones using a DHCP Scope Option when other vendor phones in the enterprise point to the same DHCP server and use one of the standard DHCP Options described in the previous sections.

To configure provisioning of AudioCodes phones using a DHCP Scope Option:

- **1.** Determine the DHCP server hosting the phones.
- 2. Determine if DHCP Options are assigned to IPv4 or IPv6 addresses.

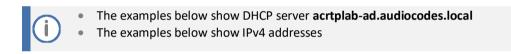
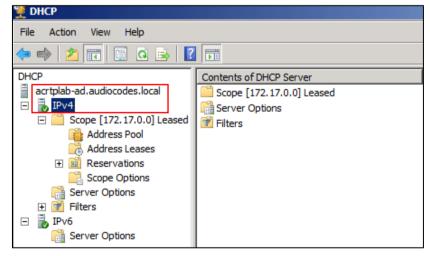


Figure 2-3: DHCP Options Assigned to IPv4 Addresses



3. Define a separate **User Class** for each AudioCodes phone model deployed: Right-click the **IPv4** server icon and from the popup menu, select **Define User Classes...**

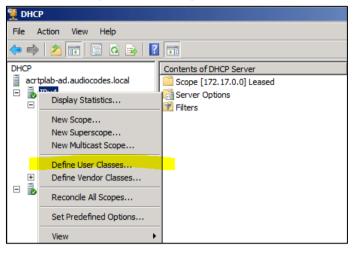


Figure 2-4: Defining User Classes

The DHCP User Classes dialog opens.

D	HCP User Classes		? ×
	Available classes:		
	Name Default Routing and R Default Network Acces Default BOOTP Class	Description User class for remote access cli Default special user class for Re User class for BOOTP Clients	Add Edit Remove
			Close

Figure 2-5: DHCP User Classes

4. Click Add...

Figure 2-6: New Class

New Class				? ×
Display nar	me:			
Description	ю.			
ID:		Binary:		ASCII:
0000	34 32 30	48 44		
			ОК	Cancel

5. In the New Class dialog, enter Display name and Description as indicated in the figure above, and then in the ASCII field, enter the User Class Phone Type (see the Packet Bytes window in Wireshark below for an *illustrative example*, and see the table below for the other AudioCodes phone models) to be sent from the phone during DHCP Discover via Option 77 (supported by DHCP Server 2008). Do this for each AudioCodes phone model so that a User Class entry for each model deployed will exist when completed.

Figure 2-7: Packet Bytes Window

No.	Time	Source	Destination	DPort Protocol Le	ength Info		
14	40 2015-06-01 15:58:12.413405000	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.255	67 DHCP	590 DHCP Discover	 Transaction I 	D 0x42c58f43
14	41 2015-06-01 15:58:12.436583000	10.7.14.252	10.7.14.82	68 DHCP	363 DHCP Offer	- Transaction I	D 0x42c58f43
14	42 2015-06-01 15:58:12.441290000	10.7.14.251	10.7.14.82	68 DHCP	363 DHCP Offer	- Transaction I	D 0x42c58f43
14	43 2015-06-01 15:58:12.473426000	0.0.0.0	255.255.255.255	67 DHCP	590 DHCP Request	- Transaction I	D 0x42c58f43
14	44 2015-06-01 15:58:12.485196000	10.7.14.251	10.7.14.82	68 DHCP	363 DHCP ACK	- Transaction I	D 0x42c58f43
14	45 2015-06-01 15:58:12.486309000	10.7.14.252	10.7.14.82	68 DHCP	363 DHCP ACK	- Transaction I	D 0x42c58f43
e [m				
	Host Name: 420HD-00908F3BC566				÷		
	tion: (60) Vendor class identif	ier					
	Length: 11						
	Vendor class identifier: CPE-OCP	HONE					
	tion: (77) User Class Informatio						
	Length: 5						
	Instance of User Class: [0]						
	User Class Length: 52						
	<pre>[Expert Info (Error/Protocol):</pre>	User Class Informa	tion: malformed option	1			1
	[User Class Information: malf		teron. marrormed operor	1			
	[Severity level: Error]	ormed operong					
	[Group: Protocol]						
	tion: (55) Parameter Request Li	**					
	200 (Ball)						
0140		32 30 48 44 37 OF	OCPHONEM . 420HD7.				<u>م</u>
0150 0160		2a 2b 42 43 a0 ff 00 00 00 00 00 00					
0170		00 00 00 00 00 00					
0180		00 00 00 00 00 00 00	••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••				
0190	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00						
01a0	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	00 00 00 00 00 00					

6. Make sure one DHCP User Class entry exists for each AudioCodes phone model deployed in the enterprise.

DHCP User Classes	? X
Description	Add
User class for remote access cli Default special user class for Re	Edit
AudioCodes 450HD IP Phone	Remove
	Close
	Description User class for remote access cli Default special user class for Re User class for BOOTP Clients

Figure 2-8: DHCP User Classes

Table 2-5: DHCP User Class Entry for Each AudioCodes Phone Model Deployed

Display Name	Description	ASCII
445HD	AudioCodes 445HD IP Phone	445HD
450HD	AudioCodes 450HD IP Phone	450HD
C450HD	AudioCodes C450HD IP Phone	C450HD
RX50	AudioCodes Conference Phone	RX50

Defining a User Class on Windows 2008, using 'Set Predefined Options'

7. Configure Scope Option 160. This is not a *standard* Scope Option, so it needs to be created. To create it on the server, select the IP version (IPv4) and select Set Predefined Options...

📜 DHCP	🚆 DHCP				
File Action View Help					
🗢 🔿 🞽 🖬 🖬 🙆 😣 👔					
DHCP acrtplab-ad.audiocodes.local Display Statistics New Scope New Superscope New Multicast Scope Define User Classes Define Vendor Classes E Concile All Scopes Set Predefined Options View Refresh Export List	Contents of DHCP Server Scope [172. 17.0.0] Leased Server Options Filters				
Properties					
Add, remc Help	defined list				

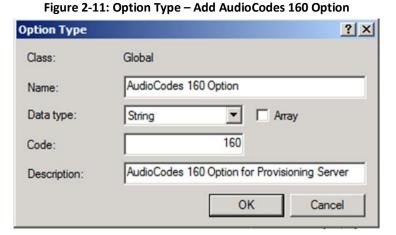
Figure 2-9: Set Predefined Options

8. From the 'Option class' dropdown, select DHCP Standard Options, and then click Add...

Figure 2-10: Predefined Options and Values

Predefined Option	is and Values	? ×
Option class:	DHCP Standard Options	•
Option name:	002 Time Offset	•
	Add Edit	Delete
Description:	UCT offset in seconds	
Value Long: Ox0		
	ОК	Cancel

9. Add the AudioCodes 160 Option as shown below, and then click OK.



10. Add the IP Phone Management Server location using HTTP. In the figure below, it's http://<EMS IP address>/firmwarefiles;ipp/dhcpoption160.cfg. See the *Device Manager Administrator's Manual* for detailed information.

Figure 2-12: Predefined Options and Values – Add IP Phone Management Server Location

Option class:	DHCP Standard Options
Option name:	160 AudioCodes 160 Option
	Add Edit Delete
Description:	AudioCodes 160 Option for Provisioning Server
Value	
String:	
http://1/2.1/.	0.123/firmwarefiles;ipp/dhcpoption160.cfg
	0.123/firmwarefiles,ipp/dhcpoption160.cfg
Inttp://1/2.1/.	0.123/fimwarefiles,ipp/dhcpoption160.cfg
Inttp://1/2.1/.	0.123/fimwarefiles,ipp/dhcpoption160.cfg
Inttp://1/2.1/.	0.123/fimwarefiles,ipp/dhcpoption160.cfg
Inttp://1/2.1/.	0.123/firmwarefiles.jpp/dhcpoption160.cfg

Ensure you defined http://<EMS IP address>/firmwarefiles;ipp/dhcpoption160.cfg for DHCP Option 160 in the enterprise's DHCP server.

11. Decide if the DHCP Scope Option needs to be assigned to phones in a *specific VLAN (Scope)*, or to the *entire server* (acrtplab-ad.audiocodes.local) for IPv4 addresses.

VLAN Scope

- 12. Assign to a specific VLAN (Scope of IP addresses such as the Scope below 172.17.0.0, or to multiple Scopes, to be performed separately on each Scope).
 - a. If selecting a VLAN, expand the 'Scope Leased' folder, select 'Scope Options', and then select **Configure Options** from the popup menu.

👯 DHCP					
File Action View Help					
🗢 🔿 🗖 🚾 🗠 🛃					
DHCP	Option N	lame	Vendor	V	
acrtplab-ad.audiocodes.local	🔝 002 Time Offset		Standard	0	
E DIPv4	E 003 F	Router	Standard	1	
Scope [172.17.0.0] Leased	E 0421	VTP Servers	Standard	1	
Address Pool	119 🗈	DNS Search List	Standard	a	
Address Leases	🔠 001 U	JCIdentifier	MSUCClient	4	
Reservations	002 URL Scheme		MSUCClient	6	
Scope Onfigure Opti	ons	eb Server FQDN	MSUCClient	6	
Ciliana I		me Server	Standard	1	
E IPv6	· ·	prt	MSUCClient	3	
Server Op Refresh		elative Path for Cert Prov	MSUCClient	2	
Export List		NS Servers	Standard	1	
		NS Domain Name	Standard	a	
Help		endor Specific Info	Standard	4	
		Sip Server	Standard	0	
		AudioCodes 160 Option	Standard	h	
	160 /	AudioCodes 160 Option	Standard	h	
	160 /	AudioCodes 160 Option	Standard	h	

Figure 2-13: 'Scope Leased' Folder - Configure Options

-OR-

b. Select the collapsed folder 'Scope Leased' and in the main window, right-click 'Scope Options' and select **Configure Options...**

Figure 2-14: Configure Options 1

DHCP				
File Action View Help	File Action View Help			
🗢 🔿 🙋 🖬 🙆 🖬	3			
DHCP	Contents of S	Scope		
acrtplab-ad.audiocodes.local	💼 Address P	ool		
🖃 🚡 IPv4	👼 Address L	eases		
E Scope [172.17.0.0] Leased	Reservations			
Gerver Options	Scope Op	Configure Op	tions	
 IPv6 Server Options 		Refresh		
		Help		
	-			

-OR-

Server Option

13. If assigning to the entire server (acrtplab-ad.audiocodes.local), select the 'Server Options' folder under server **IPv4**, right-click 'Server Options' and select **Configure Options...**

🚆 DHCP					
File Action View H	lelp				
🧢 🔿 🖄 🚾 🛛	🗢 🔿 🙍 💀 🔽 📷				
DHCP		Option Nam	e	Vendor	
acrtplab-ad.audiocode	es.local	001 UCIdentifier		MSUCClient	
🖃 ᡖ IPv4	🖃 ᡖ IPv4		e Offset	Standard	
E Scope [172.1]	-	遺 002 URL	Scheme	MSUCClient MSUCClient	
Address P		着 003 Wel	o Server FQDN		
Address L		a 004 Time	e Server	Standard	
E Reservation Cope Opt		着 004 Port	t	MSUCClient	
Server Option		📲 005 Rela	tive Path for Cert Prov	MSUCClient	
	Configure O	ptions	Servers	Standard	
IPv6	16		Domain Name	Standard	
Server Optio	View		Servers	Standard	
	Refresh		dor Specific Info	Standard	
	Export List		erver	Standard	
	Help				

Figure 2-15: Configure Options 2

14. In the Server Options page (or Scope Options page) that opens, select the Advanced tab, ensure that DHCP Standard Options remains selected, and select the phone model for the first User Class to be defined. Scroll through the Available Options (all are cleared) and select only 160 AudioCodes 160 Option.

The figure below shows the Server Options page. The Scope Options page is identical. Note that the String value you defined for Scope Option 160 is automatically populated, so it's unnecessary to change it. Note also that if additional DHCP Options are required (such as DNS or time server) that are different from the Servers Options for the rest of the Scopes on the server, they can also be selected, but this is typically not needed.

endor class:	DHCP Standard Options	
ser class:		
Available Options		Description
121 Classiess St		Destination,
160 AudioCodes	160 Option	AudioCodes-
•		
Data entry		
String value:		
http://10.1.8.23/	configfiles/dhcp_option.cfg	
http://10.1.8.23/	configfiles/dhcp_option.cfg	

Figure 2-16: Server Options

15. Add each phone's User Class.

You have successfully created separate Scope Options that will only allow AudioCodes phones to connect to the Device Manager when they boot up and will not allow other vendor phones from receiving Device Manager server as their configuration server.

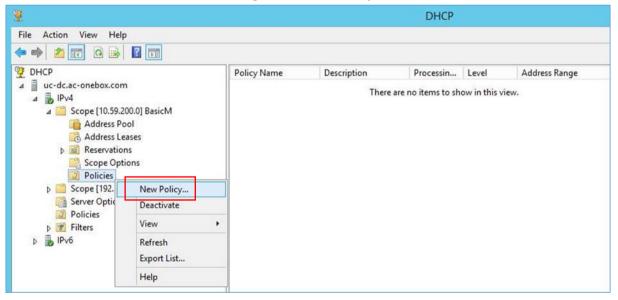
ile Action View Help				
• 🔿 🙍 🖬 🖸 🖬 👘				
DHCP	Option Name	Vendor	Value	Class 🔺
rootdc2013.ac5pip.com	🗈 002 Time Offset	Standard	0x2a30	None
🖃 ᡖ IPv4	🗈 003 Router	Standard	192.168.86.1	None
	🗈 004 Time Server	Standard	10.59.1.60	None
⊞ ≦ Scope [192.168.84.0] CAC Sco	ቭ 001 UCIdentifier	MSUCClient	4d 53 2d 55 43 2d 43 6c 69 65 6e 74	None
⊞ Scope [192.168.85.0] BackUp □	🗐 002 URLScheme	MSUCClient	68 74 74 70 73	None
Scope [192.168.86.0] SBA86	🗐 003 WebServerFqdn	MSUCClient	4c 79 6e 63 50 6f 6f 6c 32 30 31 33	None
📑 Address Pool	🗐 004 WebServerPort	MSUCClient	34 34 33	None
Address Leases Reservations	🚪 005 CertProvRelPath	MSUCClient	2f 43 65 72 74 50 72 6f 76 2f 43 65	None
	🗐 006 DNS Servers	Standard	10.59.1.60	None
Server Options	着 015 DNS Domain Name	Standard	AC5pip.com	None
	🗐 042 NTP Servers	Standard	10.59.1.60	None
	🚪 120 UCSipServer	Standard	00 Oc 4c 79 6e 63 50 6f 6f 6c 32 30	None
	📰 160 Audiocodes 160 Option	Standard	http://10.1.8.23/configfiles/dhcp_o	405
	📰 160 Audiocodes 160 Option	Standard	http://10.1.8.23/configfiles/dhcp_o	420HD
	🗈 160 Audiocodes 160 Option	Standard	http://10.1.8.23/configfiles/dhcp_o	430HD
	🗈 160 Audiocodes 160 Option	Standard	http://10.1.8.23/configfiles/dhcp_o	440HD
	160 Audiocodes 160 Option	Standard	http://10.1.8.23/configfiles/dhcp_o	450HD



Defining a User Class on Windows 2012, using 'Policies'

16. Right-click **Polices** and from the menu that pops up, select **New Policy**:

Figure 2-18: New Policy



	DHCP Policy Configuration Wizard			
F	Policy based IP Address and Option Assignment			
	clients based on o	s you to distribute configurable settings (IP address, DHCP options) to certain conditions (e.g. vendor class, user class, MAC address, etc.). ide you setting up a new policy. Provide a name (e.g. VoIP Phone cy) and description (e.g. NTP Server option for VoIP Phones) for your		
	Policy Name:	Audiocodes IPP User Class		
	Description:			
		< Back Next > Cancel		

Figure 2-19: DHCP Policy Configuration Wizard – Policy Name

17. In the 'Policy Name' field, enter the name of the policy and click **Next**.

Figure 2-20: DHCP	Policy Configuration Wizard	- Add
-------------------	-----------------------------	-------

DH	ICP Policy Config	guration Wizard
Configure Conditions fo	r the policy	
Address) that are distribute settings to clients that mat	ed to the client. The DI tch these conditions.	a set of configuration settings (options, IP HCP server delivers these specific ed domain name can have ions or IP address ranges.
Conditions	Operator	Value
C <u>A</u> ND ₢ <u>o</u> r	Add	I <u>R</u> emove
		< Back Next > Cancel

18. Click **Add** as shown in the figure above; the Add/Edit Condition screen opens:

	Add/Edi	t Condition	? ×
Specify a c and values <u>C</u> riteria: <u>O</u> perator: Value(s) <u>V</u> alue:	Interest of the policy being for the condition.	g configured. Select a	criteria, operator
		Ok	Cancel

Figure 2-21: Add/Edit Condition

- **19.** From the 'Criteria' dropdown, select **User Class**.
- 20. From the 'Operator' dropdown, select Equals.
- 21. From the 'Value' dropdown, select the relevant user class created in the previous step (445HD / 450HD / C450HD / RX50) and then click Add.
- 22. After each relevant User Class has been added, click **Ok**; the policy conditions screen opens, as shown in the figure on the next page:

Figure 2-22: Policy Conditions

Configure Conditions for the policy A policy consists of one or more conditions and a set of configuration settings (options, IP Address) that are distributed to the client. The DHCP server delivers these specific settings to clients that match these conditions. Image: A policy with conditions based on fully qualified domain name can have configuration settings for DNS but not for options or IP address ranges. Image: Conditions Operator Value Image: Conditions User Class Equals 450 Equals	D	HCP Policy Config	uration Wizard
Address) that are distributed to the client. The DHCP server delivers these specific settings to clients that match these conditions. A policy with conditions based on fully qualified domain name can have configuration settings for DNS but not for options or IP address ranges. Conditions Operator Value User Class Equals 450	onfigure Conditions	for the policy	
Conditions Operator Value User Class Equals 450	Address) that are distrib settings to clients that n	uted to the client. The Di natch these conditions.	HCP server delivers these specific
			1
	User Class	Equals	450

23. Click **Next**; the policy settings screen opens:

Figure 2-23: Policy	Settings – IP	Address Range	e for the Policy
---------------------	---------------	----------------------	------------------

	DHCP Policy Configuration Wizard	
Configure settings f If the conditions sp applied.	for the policy pecified in the policy match a client request, the settings will be	()
defined in a policy w Configure the start ar range must be within	divided into multiple IP address ranges. Clients that match the c ill be issued an IP Address from the specified range. and end IP address for the range. The start and end IP addresse in the start and end IP addresses of the scope. P address range is 10.59.200.150 - 10.59.200.250	
address from the sco	ge is not configured for the policy, policy clients will be issued an oppe range. figure an IP address range for the policy: <u>Yes</u>	
<u>S</u> tart IP address:		
End IP address:	a a a	
Percentage of IP ad	Idress range: No valid range specified	
	< Back Next >	Cancel

24. Select the **No** option, and click **Next**; the policy settings screen opens:

Configure settings for the policy If the conditions specified in the policy match a client request, the settings will be applied. Vendor class: DHCP Standard Options Available Options Description ✓ 160 160 Audiocodes Option 160 160 Audiocodes Option 1 ✓ 240 Private private ✓ III Data entry String value: [:http://172.17.0.123/firmwarefiles.jpp/dhcpoptior]	
Available Options Description ☑ 160 160 Audiocodes Option 160 160 Audiocodes Option 1 ☑ 240 Private private <	
☑ 160 160 Audiocodes Option 160 160 Audiocodes Option 1 ☑ 240 Private private <	
240 Private private <	
III Data entry String value:	~
Data entry	
String value:	>
< Back Next >	

Figure 2-24: Policy Settings – Available Options

- 25. From the 'Vendor class' dropdown, select DHCP Standard Options, as shown above.
- 26. Scroll down in the 'Available Options' pane until you locate the predefined Audiocodes **Option160** option, and then select it.
- **27.** In the 'String value' field, enter the correct provisioning URL, and click **Next**; the Summary screen opens, shown in the figure on the next page.

Figure 2-25: Policy Settings – Summary

DHC	Policy Configu	aration Wiz	ard	
Summary			Ċ	S)
A new policy will be created w view properties of the policy a Name: Audiocodes IPP Description: Conditions: OR of	nd click the DNS tab		gure DNS settings,	
Conditions	Operator	Value		
User Class	Equals	450H		
Settings:				
Option Name	Vendor Class		Value	
160 Audiocodes Option 160			http://172.17.0.1	
		< <u>B</u> ack	Finish Cance	-

28. Click **Finish** to complete the settings. Make sure the new policy name is displayed in the DHCP GUI, as shown in the figure below:

Figure 2-26: DHCP GUI - Policy Name: AudioCodes IPP User Class

<u>ğ</u>		DHCP			
File Action View Help					
🗢 🔿 🙍 🏹 🗶 🖾 🧔 🛑					
9 DHCP	Policy Name	Description	Processin	Level	Address Ra
 ✓ Uc-dc.ac-onebox.com ✓ IPv4 ✓ Scope [10.59.200.0] BasicM Address Pool Address Leases ▷ IR Reservations Scope Options Policies ▷ Scope [192.168.0.0] Basic Server Options Policies ▷ Filters ▷ IPv6 	Audiocodes IPP User Class		1	Scope	

2.1.2 Making Sure the DHCP Server is Correctly Configured for Auto Provisioning

After creating a .cfg configuration file (see Section 2.2), place it - and the software file (img) and other files such as tone files - on a provisioning server from where the IP phones can download and install it.

To get the URLs to this provisioning server, the IP phones use DHCP. The provisioning server can be HTTP/S, TFTP or FTP server.

The phone features *automatic update capability* to update the configuration and the software. Checks for newer configuration files and software versions are routinely automatically performed. Manual checks can also be performed.

To make sure the feature functions correctly:

- 1. Verify that the provisioning server is running and that the configuration and firmware files are located in the correct location on it.
- 2. Connect the phone to the IP network and then to power.
- On the DHCP server, configure DHCP Option 160 with the URL to the provisioning server where the configuration and firmware files are located.
 By default, the IP phone uses Option 160 which has highest priority.
 If absent, the IP phone uses Options 66/67 for TFTP.

The following syntax is available for DHCP option 160:

- <protocol>://<server IP address or host name>/<firmware file name>;<configuration file name>
- <protocol>://<server IP address or host name>
- orotocol>://<server IP address or host name>/<firmware file name>
- <protocol>://<server IP address or host name>/;<configuration file name>

Where <protocol> can be "ftp", "tftp", "http" or "https"

- 4. During DHCP negotiation, the phone requests DHCP options 66/67/160 to receive provisioning information. The DHCP server responds with Option 160 providing the provisioning URL, or Options 66 and 67 providing the TFTP IP address and firmware file name respectively.
- 5. The phone then checks whether new firmware is available by checking the firmware file header. If the version is different from the one currently running on it, the phone downloads the complete image and burns it to its flash memory.
- 6. If new firmware is unavailable, the phone checks whether a new configuration file is available on the server. If available, the phone downloads it and updates the phone's configuration after verifying that the configuration file is related to the phone model. When a configuration update is needed, the phone might reboot.
 - Only *img* (firmware) and cfg (configuration) files can be used.
 - In the DHCP Discover message, the phone publishes its model name in Option fields 60 and 77 (e.g., 450HD). To provide different provisioning information to different models, set up a policy in the DHCP server according to phone model name.
 - If the phone is powered off during provisioning, it becomes unusable; perform a recovery process (see Section 5 on page 178).

Configuration File

2.2 Creating a Configuration File for Auto Provisioning

Most phones deployed in an enterprise typically require identical configuration settings. Best practice for creating a configuration file for auto provisioning is to:

- 1. Without signing in, use the Web interface to save a single phone's default configuration (factory settings) as a .cfg file.
- 2. Configure that single phone to perform according to your specific performance requirements in the enterprise.
- 3. Save the phone's newly configured settings as a .cfg file.
- 4. Create a configuration .cfg file containing only the delta between the default .cfg and the newly configured enterprise-specific .cfg file.
- 5. Load this delta .cfg file to another phone, sign in, and test that phone's performance to see if it matches requirements.
- 6. Use this delta configuration .cfg file to automatically provision all IP phones through DHCP.

2.2.1 Saving a Single Phone's Default Configuration as a .cfg File

To save a single phone's default configuration as a .cfg file:

- Get the phone's IP address (MENU key > Status > Network Status > IP Address) and point your Web browser to it; the phone's Web interface login page opens.
- 2. Enter the login credentials (default user name is **admin**; get Windows credentials from IT); the Home page of the Web interface is displayed.
- Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update menu > Configuration File).

<pre>;UC_3.0.1.63.214 ems_server/keep_alive_period=60 ems_server/provisioning/url=http://10.1.8.23:8081/ ems_server/user_name=Alan Roberts kernel/cfg/enable_core_dump=1 lync/BToE/CheckNetwork=0 lync/BToE/ServerCntControlChannelFail=1 lync/BToE/StoProtNumber=9999 lync/BToE/YoipCntControlChannelFail=1 lync/BToE/gruu=sip:alan.roberts@audiocodes.com;opaque=user:epid:Wpi lync/BToE/gruu=sip:alan.roberts@audiocodes.com;opaque=user:epid:Wpi lync/BToE/gruu=sip:alan.roberts@audiocodes.com;opaque=user:epid:Wpi lync/BToE/mame=AudioCodes 400HD Phone</pre>	Configuration File
	<pre>ems_server/keep_alive_period=60 ems_server/provisioning/url=http://10.1.8.23:8081/ ems_server/user_name=Alan Roberts kernel/cfg/enable_core_dump=1 lync/BToE/CheckNetwork=0 lync/BToE/CheckNetwork=0 lync/BToE/IsPairing=1 lync/BToE/ServerCntControlChannelFail=1 lync/BToE/VoipCntControlChannelFail=1 lync/BToE/VoipCntControlChannelFail=1 lync/BToE/VoipCntControlChannelFail=1 lync/BToE/VoipCntControlChannelFail=1</pre>

Figure 2-27: Web Interface - Configuration File

4. Click Save Current Configuration File and save the .cfg file in a folder on your PC.

2.2.2 Configuring the Phone According to Requirements

You must configure a phone according to your specific requirements in the enterprise.

To configure a phone according to your specific requirements in the enterprise:

Use Section 3 as reference.

2.2.3 Save the Phone's Newly Configured Settings as a .cfg File

After configuring a single phone according to your specific requirements, save the newly configured settings as a .cfg file.

To save the newly configured settings as a .cfg file:

- In the Web interface, open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update menu > Configuration File) (see Figure 2-27).
- 2. Click Save Current Configuration File and save the .cfg file in a folder on your PC.

2.2.4 Creating a Delta Configuration .cfg File

Create a configuration .cfg file containing only the delta between the default .cfg and the newly configured enterprise-specific .cfg file.

To create a configuration .cfg file of the delta:

- In the Web interface, open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update menu > Configuration File) (see Figure 2-27).
- 2. Select the **Display modified configuration fields only** option; only those default parameters you modified are displayed.
- 3. Click Save Current Configuration File and save the .cfg file in a folder on your PC.

2.2.5 Loading the Delta .cfg File to Another Phone, Signing In, Testing

You must load the delta .cfg file you created in the previous section to another phone, sign in, and test that phone's performance to see if it matches requirements.

2.2.5.1 Loading the Delta .cfg File to Another Phone

To load the delta .cfg file to another phone:

- Get the phone's IP address (MENU key > Status > Network Status > IP Address) and point your Web browser to it; the phone's Web interface login page opens.
- 2. Enter the login credentials (default user name is **admin**; get Windows credentials from IT); the Home page of the Web interface is displayed.
- Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update menu > Configuration File) and then click Loading new Configuration File:

Figure 2-28: Web Interface – Loading a New Configuration File

Configurat	ion File	
	Load new Configuration File	
	File Location:	Browse
		Submit

4. Navigate to the folder in which you stored the delta configuration .cfg file, select it, and then click **Submit**; the configuration file is loaded to the phone.

2.2.5.2 Signing In to the Phone

- For instructions on how to sign in through the phone's screen, see the phone's *User's Manual*.
- For instructions on how to sign in through the Web interface, see Section 4.23.

The RX50 by default does not include a sign-in key for users. Sign-in can be performed by users with Administrator privilege (via MENU > **Admin** key). The administrator can however change the privileges of the user for a sign-in to be available to them, by changing the value of configuration file parameter 'account/sip/permission' from **ADMIN** (default) to **USER**.

2.2.5.3 Testing the Phone

You must test the phone to see if the newly configured settings match your requirements. See the *User's Manual* for information on how to operate the phone's functions and features.

2.2.5.4 Changing the Order of the Sign-In Method

Most enterprises prefer the 'PIN code' option to precede the 'Phone number' option as the default method for signing in. In the default order, 'Phone number' precedes 'PIN code', but administrators can change it.

To change the default method for signing in:

In the Configuration File (Management tab > Configuration File), change the 'lync/sign_in/method' parameter value to NUMBER_AND_PIN.

2.2.5.5 Allowing Users to Display Phone # or Ext # in Phone Screen

Using parameter 'lync/sign_in/line_type_display/ext', you can allow users to define whether to display their telephone number or their extension number in the phone's screen. This is only possible if the enterprise's Active Directory includes both. Default: **1** (extension number).

2.2.5.6 Forcing Sign-in with PIN Code

Network administrators can force users to sign in with PIN code using Configuration File parameter *sign_in/pin_code_only*. In this mode, the only sign-in option is with user extension number and PIN code. Allowing only the basic PIN code option on the user's phone helps avoid user mistakes and helps avoid storing the user password on the phone.

To force sign-in with PIN code:

- Open the Configuration File page in the Web interface (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File).
- 2. Configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
sign_in/pin_code_only	Determines which online sign-in method option must be used.
	 [0] (Default) Allows sign-in with user credentials and with user extension number and PIN code. [1] Sign-in can only be with user extension number and PIN code.

Table 2-6: Forcing Sign-In with PIN Code

2.2.5.7 Online Sign-in through Microsoft's Cloud PBX

Users can sign in, connect and authenticate with Microsoft's Cloud PBX (online sign-in), Microsoft's cloud-hosted version of enterprise voice. The phone features two sign-in method options allowing users to connect to Microsoft's Cloud PBX:

- ADAL (Azure AD Authentication Library) that is based on OAuth 2.0 (<u>RFC 6749</u>). The phone always starts with ADAL and if it's unavailable on the server side, the phone moves to OrgID.
- OrgID (Organizational ID) or LiveID is Microsoft's proprietary connectivity to Cloud services.

Online sign-in must be in the following format:

- Sign-in address
- Username in UPN (User Principal Name) format. UPN format is the way the user's name appears in their e-mail address listed in the Active Directory, i.e., username@domain.com
- User's network IT password

Signing in with a username that is a NetBIOS Domain Name, i.e.,

domain\username, as well as signing in with the phone Extension and PIN Code, are disallowed for Skype for Business *online sign-in*. They are only allowed for *on-premises* sign-in.

Users can sign in using the **Web sign-in** option, a.k.a. Device Pairing, which allows them to connect to Microsoft's Cloud PBX, i.e., to get connectivity to Microsoft's Cloud PBX, Microsoft's cloud-hosted version of enterprise voice.



This sign-in option applies only to Microsoft Cloud PBX users.

The option exempts users from having to laboriously key in their user name and password using the phone keypad in order to sign in. If the option is selected, a URL and a Pairing Code are displayed, as shown in the figure above. Users must then point their browser to the URL and enter the Pairing Code in the Microsoft web page. Sign-in to Microsoft's Cloud PBX is then performed.

To sign-in:

- Open the Configuration File page in the Web interface (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File).
- 2. Configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
lync/sign_in/support_adal	 Determines which online sign-in method option is used. [0] The phone uses the OrgID method option to sign in. [1] (Default) The phone first attempts to use the ADAL (Azure Active Directory Authentication Libraries) method option and only if ADAL fails, the phone uses the OrgID option.

2.2.5.8 Disabling AutoDiscover Web Service Protocol

You can disable AutoDiscover Web Service Protocol [MS-OCDISCWS] which is by default enabled. AutoDiscover improves discovery of the phone's SIP home server during the sign-in process. The phone finds its home server URL for a specific Skype for Business account, based on user credentials. The protocol is especially efficient for Skype for Business online and hybrid environments, when phones must sign in to a different Skype for Business server according to the user's account.

The home server was previously found using DNS SRV records based only on a SIP account domain [MS-CONMGMT]. If AutoDiscover is unsuccessful, the phone falls back to SRV DNS.

Table 2-8: AutoDiscover Web Service Protocol

Parameter	Description
lync/sign_in/auto_discovery_enabled	[0] Disabled.[1] Enabled (Default)

2.3 Copying the Configuration File to the Provisioning Server

After creating the delta configuration .cfg file as shown in the previous section, copy the file to the provisioning server (e.g., TFTP server) from which the phones download it when they're connected and powered up. Make sure DHCP Option (e.g., Option 160) on your DHCP server is configured with the correct URL pointing to the provisioning server's directory.

2.4 Triggering Automatic Provisioning

When you connect the IP phones to the network and power them up, the phones' automatic provisioning is triggered. The phones automatically send out a DHCP Discovery request and then receive IP address information (e.g., TFTP server's address) in the DHCP Options sent by the DHCP server. The phones then contact the provisioning server for downloading the required files (e.g., .cfg file and firmware .img file).

2.5 Troubleshooting Automatic Provisioning

2.5.1 Using the Phone Screen

i

Use the table below to help troubleshoot deployment problems that can occur after preparing the enterprise network environment for IP phone deployment.

Tip: Use the *first phone* that you deploy as an *indicator* for the entire deployment. If the first phone plugs in and plays without irregularities, all phones deployed after it should also. If it doesn't, troubleshoot as shown in this section before proceeding to deploy the other phones.

After preparing the network and verifying readiness, make sure the Skype for Business PC client is operating, i.e., that the Skype for Business server-client (Front End) setup is correct. Only after this, deploy the first phone.

Problem / Phone Screen Notification	Corrective Action
Certificate problem Phone Screen Notification: "Failed to validate certificate" -or- "Failed to obtain user certificate"	 Three possible actions: Make sure DHCP Option 43, sub-option 5, was enabled in the DHCP server. If it wasn't, enable it. Make sure you can access the Skype for Business Web service URL: https://lyncsvrWebPoolFQDN:443/CertProv/CertProvisioningService.svc Query the LDAP server: ldaptcp.<domain name=""> Make sure it was enabled. If it wasn't, enable it in order to get the root certificate.</domain>
Synchronization problem. Phone Screen Notification: "Failed to connect to time server" -or- "PIN internal error"	 Make sure at least one of the following was configured to enable synchronization: NTP server, via DNS SRV record (_ntpudp.<sip domain="">pointing to NTP server)</sip> NTP server, returned via DHCP Option 42 Time.windows.com Time.nist.gov Configuration Parameter (manually)
Phone not initializing	Make sure DHCP is enabled.
Cannot find SIP server for 'Domain name'. Phone can't perform registration. Phone Screen Notification: "Failed to connect <domain> server" -or- "Cannot find Lync server at <>"</domain>	 Make sure at least one of the following is enabled in the DNS server: _sipinternaltlstcp.<domain> (for TLS)</domain> DHCP results (Option 120) (for TLS) _sipinternaltcp.<domain> (for TCP)</domain> DHCP results (Option 120) (for TCP) _siptls.<domain> (for TLS)</domain> _siptcp.<domain> (for TCP)</domain> _siptcp.<domain> (for TCP)</domain> Make sure 'Location look up' is configured by the
Phone Screen Notification: "Location look-up failed. Please enter your address."	Make sure Location look up is configured by the management shell in the Skype for Business server.

Table 2-9: Troubleshooting Deployment Problems

i

Problem / Phone Screen Notification	Corrective Action
Phone Screen Notification: "LAN Link failure"	The LAN link is disconnected. This is a general networking problem that's beyond the scope of this document. Either there's a physical cabling issue or there's a local or VLAN communications problem.
Phone Screen Notification: "Duplicate IP"	 This is a general networking problem. The IP address configured for this endpoint was already configured for another. In the DHCP server, delete the duplicate IP address and
	request another.
Phone Screen Notification: "Failed to connect to Lync server"	This is a general networking problem beyond the scope of this document. If a communications problem occurs in the enterprise network, for example, if the server goes down, this notification is displayed on the phone screen.
Phone Screen Notification: "PIN invalid phone info"	 The phone number or extension that was entered is invalid. Make sure the correct information was entered in the phone screen and in the Skype for Business server interface, and that they tally. Verify in the Skype for Business server interface that the PIN is enabled and if it isn't, enable it.
Phone Screen Notification: "PIN not set"	 Make sure in the Skype for Business server interface that a PIN was configured for this user account. If it wasn't, create a PIN for the account.
Phone Screen Notification: "PIN expired"	In the Skype for Business server interface, renew the PIN expiration policy.
Phone Screen Notification: "PIN account disabled"	Make sure in the Skype for Business server interface that the account was enabled. If it wasn't, enable it.
Phone Screen Notification: "PIN internal error"	 Test the PIN Authentication process on the Skype for Business server: Run in the server shell the emulate cmdlet: Test-CsPhoneBootstrap -PhoneOrExt nnnn -PIN nnnn If the test result is 'fail', there's a configuration error on the Skype for Business server side, hence the PIN sign-in failure on the phone side. To troubleshoot, see: http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/gg412852.aspx

• The *ringer* LED remains red until the problem is corrected.

• Users cannot dial or initiate calls if a phone screen notification is displayed.

2.6 Device Manager

Network administrators can provision an enterprise's phones from the server of the One Voice Operations Center (OVOC) module, Device Manager.



- Device Manager and OVOC share the same server location.
- For more information on using Device Manager to provision phones, see the *Device Manager Administrator's Manual*.

To configure provisioning phones from the OVOC server:

Use the table as reference.

Table 2-10: OVOC Server Param	neters
-------------------------------	--------

Parameter	Description
ems_server/keep_alive_period	The OVOC server sends a keep alive message at a configured interval to verify that its link with the network is operating. If no reply is received, the link is determined to be down or not working. Default: 60 minutes
ems_server/provisioning/url	Defines the URL of the OVOC server, for example, http://10.1.8.23:8081
ems_server/user_name	Defines the username of the administrator who'll use the OVOC server for provisioning, for example, John Smith.
ems_server/user_password	Defines the password (encrypted) of the network administrator who'll provision the phones from the OVOC server, for example: {"Y6QYmP53BDkoTvulFjEBuQ=="}

2.7 Audiocodes Device Manager Validation

2.7.1 Introduction

This section describes the configuration requirements of working with Audiocodes IP-Phone device series *Teams Compatible* out of the box in secured environment.

The security process (SSL connection) starts with a phone request to the server, followed phone verification if the server can be trusted. During this process the server send his certificate to the phone and the phone verifies this certificate based on its pre burned trusted certificates list. TLS handshake is strict security.

A valid server cert defined if (1) the server's certificate chain is valid against a list of Trusted CAs (see appendix A) pre-installed on the phone, (2) the server's hostname is valid for each certificate in the chain (issuer field of the certificate should match subject field of the upper issuer in the chain certificate) and (3) the expiration date is valid.

2.7.2 Prerequisites

Audiocodes IP-Phone device with pre-installed trusted CAs

2.7.3 Overview

The device validates the AudioCodes Device Manager identity using known root CA:

The device is shipped with known Root CAs installed. (See Appendix B – AudioCodes Root

CA Certificate)

For the initial connection phase, the AudioCodes Device Manager should access the

device using a known CA.

Once a successful secured connection has been established between the device and the Device Manager, the user can replace the root CA on the Device Manager and on the device and re-establish

the connection leveraging any private root CA.

Backward compatibility is supported:

- To implement backward compatibility, the configuration file parameter 'security/SSLCertificateErrorsMode' must be changed from the default to Ignore:
 - SSLCertificateErrorsMode = Disallow (default)
 - SSLCertificateErrorsMode = Ignore (allows backward compatibility though vulnerability will increase); the phone will proceed without checking the received certificates and without any notifications
 - In case the server isn't signed by one of the root-CAs IP-Phone supports, it is recommended to:
 - Download the needed root-CA via HTTP by IPP configuration using security/ca_certificate/<0-4>/uri
 - This way the user doesn't need to change security/SSLCertificateErrorsMode to IGNORE.
 - Before upgrade to 3.4.6.x version download the root-CA using the secured connection https.

2. Automatic Mass Provisioning of IP Phones using DHCP

2.7.4 Existing Root CA Files in IP Phone

The following list are existing Root CA Files in IP Phone:

- CNNIC_ROOT.cer
- Comodo_AAA_Certificate_Services.cer
- COMODO_Root_CA.cer
- Cybetrust_Baltimore_CyberTrust_Root.cer
- Cybetrust_GlobalSign_Root_CA.cer
- Cybetrust_GTE_CyberTrust_Global_Root.cer
- DigiCert_Cloud_Services_CA-1.cer
- DigiCertGlobalG2TLSRSASHA2562020CA1.cer
- DigiCertGlobalRootCA.cer
- DigiCertGlobalRootG2.cer
- DigiCertGlobalRootG3.cer
- DigiCert_High_Assurance_EV_Root_CA.cer
- DigiCertSHA2SecureServerCA.cer
- DST_Root_CA_X3.cer
- D-Trust_Root_Class_3_CA_2_2009.cer
- D-TRUST_Root_Class_3_CA_2_EV_2009.cer
- Entrust_Entrust.net_Certification_Authority_2048.cer
- Entrust_Root_Certification_Authority_G2.cer
- GeoTrustEVRSACA2018.cer
- GeoTrust_GeoTrust_Global_CA.cer
- GlobalSign.cer
- Go_Daddy_Go_Daddy_Class_2_Certification_Authority.cer
- Go_Daddy_Starfield_Class_2_Certification_Authority.cer
- isrgrootx1.pem.cer
- letsencryptauthorityx3.cer
- StartCom_Certification_Authority.cer
- thawte_Primary_Root_CA_G3.cer
- VeriSign_Class_2_Public_Primary_Certification_Authority.cer
- VeriSign_Class_3_Public_Primary_Certification_Authority.cer
- VeriSign_Class_3_Public_Primary_Certification_Authority_G1.cer
- VeriSign_Class_3_Public_Primary_Certification_Authority_G2.cer
- VeriSign_Class_3_Public_Primary_Certification_Authority_G3.cer
- VeriSign_Class_3_Public_Primary_Certification_Authority_G5.cer

2.7.5 Certification Details Dialog

Certificate Details for File 'New Text Document.cer'		
Certificate Hierarchy:		
RootCA		
Version:	3	
0. his str		
Subject:	CN=RootCA,O=ACL	
Issuer:	CN=RootCA,O=ACL	
Serial Number:	0x1	
Valid From:	1/1/2000 2:00:00 AM IST	
Valid Until:	1/1/2030 2:00:00 AM IST	
Public Key:	RSA 2048 bits	
Signature Algorithm:	SHA256WITHRSA	
Fingerprint:	MD5 AD:F7:94:DE:B3:1D:F0:3F:74:3B:C5:42:34:51:19	
	Import Extensions PEM ASN.1	
	ОК	

----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----

 $\tt MIIDMTCCAhmgAwIBAgIBATANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQsFADAfMQwwCgYDVQQKEwNBQ0wx$ DzANBqNVBAMTB1Jvb3RDQTAeFw0wMDAxMDEwMDAwMDBaFw0zMDAxMDEwMDAwMDBa MB8xDDAKBqNVBAoTA0FDTDEPMA0GA1UEAxMGUm9vdENBMIIBIjANBqkqhkiG9w0B AQEFAAOCAQ8AMIIBCgKCAQEA6GK495KUCXAm/UE17G4/cjnZN4LNaxYEYzbfZL0a EhqSKYt/LQ+iUcDhojsneusNqrcGkpwKklKsGsvGWmSRNULV01CW+TX2VJN73+hh V0uzhyOIYAUhbDaoqNM6Kp5b7sJ1ew4Iq9kfd/ma9Cz15koESLlw/inLj/r+rD96 mUcPElWrKspv7Qy4I14fsK/yMArixRopTL1munVVPpSFM9Jh8IY3JHyr5CQJXKKs EhGAJsnHaRgsR2Su3X/WtslgEF+cvP34pxhlhFL29nMfnaFATSS3rgGaFlSv11ZS esLMqkWjp9cqGYrvt7K61sYnvMMb+o/KbWqVokXb+Fr7bwIDAQABo3gwdjAMBgNV HRMEBTADAQH/MB0GA1UdDgQWBBQDXySn9hz151DraZ+iXddZGReB+zBHBgNVHSME QDA+qBQDXySn9hz15lDraZ+iXddZGReB+6EjpCEwHzEMMAoGA1UEChMDQUNMMQ8w DQYDVQQDEwZSb290Q0GCAQEwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQELBQADggEBAI0rUywommWWJnH3 JOfKiS3+VnX5hJITZymvWanMXUz/6FonHccPXEBYTrUYwhiWx3dwELAFXDFKkxMp 0KKWZ4F39cAOLRjqhzya+xUeeJ9HQZCXYAJ6XgvTfN2BtyZk9Ma8WG+H1hNvvTZY QLbWsjQdu4eFniEufeYDke1jQ6800LwMlFlc59hMQCeJTenRx4HdJbJV86k1gBUE A7fJT1ePrRnXNDRz6QtADWoX3OmN7Meqen/roTwvLpEP22nYwvB28dq3Jet1QKwu XC4gwI/o8K2wo3pySLU9Y/vanxXCr0/en513RDz1YpYWmQwHA8jJIu8rxdhr+VNQ Zv6R/Ys=

----END CERTIFICATE----

3 Manual Configuration of a Single IP Phone

Most phones in an enterprise typically require identical configuration settings. Best practice is therefore to manually configure a single IP phone with the settings you require, and then to use the delta configuration (the difference between the default and your configured settings) to automatically provision all phones in the enterprise via DHCP.

This section shows how to manually configure a single IP phone. After manually configuring a single IP phone, create the delta configuration file as shown in Section 2.2, and place it on the provisioning server.

3.1 Configuring Network Connections

You can configure IP network connections. For information on configuring Port Mirroring, see Section 7.5 on page 192 under 'Performing Diagnostics'.

3.1.1 Configuring LAN Connection Type

The phone's LAN Connection Type can be:

- Automatic IP (DHCP) (automatically provisioned by DHCP server from where the LAN IP address is obtained) (default)
- Static IP Address

This section shows how to change LAN Connection Type in the phone's screen and through the Web interface.

To change LAN Connection Type in the phone's screen:

1. When the phone's screen is in idle display, press the MENU key and then navigate to and select the **Administration** option in the Menu screen that is displayed.



- The default password is **1234**. It's advisable for the network administrator to change it to prevent unauthorized access.
- To change the default password, use the phone's Web interface or Configuration File.
- 2. Enter the password and then **OK**.
- 3. In the Administration screen that opens, select Network Settings.
- 4. In the Network Settings screen, select LAN Connection Type.
- 5. In the LAN Connection Type screen, navigate to and select Static IP.
- 6. Define a static IP addressing scheme:
 - a. Press the **Edit** softkey and enter the new address in dotted-decimal notation, using the following keys:
 - Navigation control: moves the cursor left or right in the IP address
 - **Clear** softkey: deletes the digit to the left of the cursor.
 - b. Press the Save and then Apply softkey.
- 7. Navigate to and configure Netmask, Gateway, Primary DNS and Secondary DNS as you did IP Address.

To change the LAN Connection Type:

- Open the Configuration File page in the Web interface (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File).
- 2. Configure the parameters using the table below as reference.

Table 3-1: Network Settings – Static IP

Parameter	Description
Note: To add a value to these parameters, enter network/ followed by the parameter name, equal sign and then the value (e.g. network/lan_type=DHCP).	
network/lan_type	 Defines the IP addressing method: [STATIC] Static IP - IP address defined manually [DHCP] Automatic IP DHCP (default) - IP address is acquired automatically from a DHCP server
network/lan/fixed_ip/ip_address	The LAN IP address
network/lan/fixed_ip/netmask	The subnet mask address
network/lan/fixed_ip/gateway	The IP address of the default gateway.
network/lan/fixed_ip/domain_name	The domain name.
Domain Name Server (DNS)	
network/lan/fixed_ip/primary_dns	The primary DNS server address.
network/lan/fixed_ip/secondary_dns	The secondary DNS server address. The phone connects to this server if the primary DNS server is unavailable.

The following parameters can be configured:

Parameter	Description
network/lan_type	 Defines the IP addressing method: [STATIC] Static IP - Phone's IP address is defined manually [DHCP] Automatic IP DHCP (default) - Phone's IP address is acquired automatically from a DHCP server
network/lan/dhcp/domain_name/enabled	 Enables setting the domain name manually. [0] Disable (default) [1] Enable Note: If enabled, network/lan/fixed_ip/domain_name must also be set.
network/lan/dhcp/ip_address/enabled	 Enables setting the IP address manually. [0] Disable (default) [1] Enable Note: If enabled, network/lan/fixed_ip/ip_address must be set.
network/lan/dhcp/netmask/enabled	 Enables setting the network mask manually. [0] Disable (default) [1] Enable Note: If enabled, network/lan/fixed_ip/netmask must be set.
network/lan/dhcp/gateway/enabled	 Enables setting the default gateway manually. [0] Disable (default) [1] Enable Note: If enabled, network/lan/fixed_ip/gateway must be set.
network/lan/dhcp/primary_dns/enabled	 Enables setting the primary DNS manually. [0] Disable (default) [1] Enable Note: If enabled, network/lan/fixed_ip/primary_dns must be set.
network/lan/dhcp/secondary_dns/enabled	 Enables setting the secondary DNS manually. [0] Disable (default) [1] Enable Note: If enabled, network/lan/fixed_ip/secondary_dns must be set.

3.1.2 Configuring LAN Port / PC Port

Port settings can be configured using the Configuration File.



This section does not apply to the RX50 conference phone.

To define phone port settings:

- Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File)
- 2. Configure using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
network/lan/port_mode	Sets the LAN port mode.
	Valid values are:
	AUTOMATIC] = Auto negotiation.
	FULL_10] = 10Mbps + full duplex
	FULL_100] = 100Mbps + half duplex
	HALF_10] = 10Mbps + full duplex
	HALF_100] = 100Mbps + half duplex
network/pc/port_mode	Sets the computer port mode.
	Valid values are:
	AUTOMATIC] = Auto negotiation
	FULL_10] = 10Mbps + full duplex
	FULL_100] = 100Mbps + half duplex
	HALF_10] = 10Mbps + full duplex
	HALF_100] = 100Mbps + half duplex
	DISABLE] = Disables the PC port mode

Table 3-3: Port Settings

3.1.3 Configuring VLAN Settings

VLAN settings can be configured using the Web interface, Configuration File, or the phone's screen.

To configure the phone's VLAN settings:

- Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File).
- 2. Configure using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description	
network/lan/vlan/mode	 Determines the VLAN mode of operation. [Disable] Disable [Manual] Manual Configuration of LAN - Static configuration of VLAN ID and priority [CDP] Automatic Configuration of VLAN - VLAN discovery mechanism based on Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) [LLDP] Automatic Configuration of VLAN - VLAN discovery mechanism based on LLDP. [CDP_LLDP] Automatic Configuration of VLAN (default) - VLAN discovery mechanism based on LLDP. [CDP_LLDP] Automatic Configuration of VLAN (default) - VLAN discovery mechanism based on LLDP. 	
network/lan/vlan/period	The time period in seconds between discovery messages when configured to CDP, LLDP or CDP and LLDP. The default value is 30.	
network/lan/vlan/id	Only displayed when the 'VLAN Discovery Mode' parameter (above) is configured to Manual . The valid range is 0 to 4094. The default VLAN ID is 0.	
network/lan/vlan/priority	Only displayed when the 'VLAN Discovery Mode' parameter (above) is configured to Manual . Defines the priority of traffic pertaining to this VLAN. The valid range is 0 to 7 (where 7 is the highest priority). The default VLAN priority is 0.	

Table 3-4:	VLAN	Parameters	Description
		i ai ai ii c c c i s	Description

To configure the phone's VLAN settings from the phone's screen:

- 1. Press the phone's MENU hard key when the screen is in idle display and then in the Menu screen that opens, navigate to and select the **Administration** option.
- 2. Enter the same password you use to access your PC, and then **OK**; the Administration menu opens.
- 3. Select Network Settings and in the Network Settings screen that opens, navigate to and select VLAN Settings.
- 4. For 'VLAN mode', press the navigation control's left or right rim to choose either DISABLE, MANUAL, CDP, LLDP, or CDP_LLDP.
- 5. If you choose MANUAL, enter 'VLAN ID' and 'VLAN Priority'.
- 6. If you choose CDP, LLDP, or CDP_LLDP, you can configure an Interval.

3.2 Configuring Personal Settings

3.2.1 Configuring Language

This section describes how to configure the language displayed in the phone screen. Language displayed can be configured using the Configuration File.

To choose a language:

• Use the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
personal_settings/language	Determines the phone screen language.
	[English] English (default)
	[Spanish] Spanish
	[Russian] Russian
	[Portuguese] Portuguese
	[German] German
	[Ukraine] Ukrainian
	[French] French
	[Italian] Italian
	[Hebrew] Hebrew
	[Polish] Polish
	[Korean] Korean
	[Finnish] Suomalainen
	[Chinese] Chinese Simplified
	[Chinese] Chinese Traditional
	[Magyar] Hungarian
	 [Japanese] Japanese
	Slovak
	Czech

Table 3-5: Language Display Parameters

3.3 Configuring Function and Programmable Keys

Function Keys can be configured for Speed Dials and for Multicast Paging. Function Keys are located on the sidecar.

On the 445HD phones:

- Up to 33 Function Keys can be configured for Speed Dialing or for Multicast Paging. The 33 Speed Dials are configured on pages 1, 2 and 3 of the phone's sidecar. Users define 12 Speed Dials and then when defining the 13th, the 12th Speed Dial shows the page number and the name in the 12th moves to the 13th.
- Six programmable keys are located adjacent to the screen. There are three on each side.
 - To configure 1-6 Programmable Keys, configure **n** = **12-17** correspondingly.
 - To configure 1-12 Functional Keys, configure **n** = **0-11** correspondingly.
 - To configure 13-33 Functional Keys, configure **n** = **18-38** correspondingly.

On the 450HD / C450HD / HRS:

To configure 1-8 Programmable Keys, configure **n** = **0-7** correspondingly.

On the 450HD / C450HD phone with Expansion Module (which supports two pages and a total of 40 Functional Keys, each page displaying 20 Functional Keys):

To configure 1-40 Functional Keys, configure n = 8-27 for the first page and n = 28-47 for the second page.

On the RX50 conference device configure:

functional_key/0-5

Speed_dial/0-5

Parameter Name	Description
personal_settings/functional_key/n/key_label	Used to define a free string label allowing users to identify the key.
personal_settings/functional_key/n/type	 Choose either: EMPTY = (default) If left as is, the key will be disabled. SPEED_DIAL = key to help users quickly dial numbers that are often used or hard to remember. PAGING = When the Paging feature is enabled, you can define Paging Groups. Event = Key used to access events like DnD, Missed Call, etc. (See the next parameter for more information). VocaNOM = Enable the key if the feature is enabled. Discreet_Call = See Section 3.3.1.3 for detailed information.
personal_settings/functional_key/n/key_event personal_settings/functional_key/n/speed_dial_number	 Missed_Calls Received_Calls Dialed_Calls Directory Dnd_All Forward_All Calendar Hot_Desking Allows the user to quickly call someone whose number is often used as is bard to remember.
	number is often used or is hard to remember. Default: 4403.
personal_settings/functional_key/n/line	Corresponding to the line ID. \mathbf{n} = the value you configured as the line index.

Table 3-6: Function / Programmable Keys Parameters

3.3.1 Configuring a Function Key

3.3.1.1 Configuring a Function Key for Speed Dialing

The phone's speed dials can be defined in a simple text-based editor, placed on a server (e.g., HTTP or FTP/TFTP), and then uploaded to the phone using the Configuration File.

The Configuration File can include a link to a user-defined Speed Dial file, using the **provisioning/speed_dial_uri** parameter. This allows you to upload speed dial settings to the phone.

The Speed Dial file must include a list of speed dial configurations. The file must be a simple text file that can be created using an Excel document and saved as a CSV file.

The syntax of the speed dial file is as follows:

```
<memory key>,<speed dial phone number>,<type>
```

where:

- *memory key* denotes the speed dial memory key on the phone.
- speed dial phone number denotes the phone number that is automatically dialed, when the user presses the speed dial key.
- type denotes the Speed Dial feature and must be set to "0".

Below is an example of a Speed Dial file:

```
1,4418,0
2,4403,0
3,039764432,0
4,4391,0
12,1234,0
```

To configure a Function Key for speed dialing:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Table 3-7: Speed Dial Parameter

Parameter Name	Description
provisioning/speed_dial_uri	The URI for retrieving the speed dial list which must be included in a separate file to be downloaded to the phone during provisioning. For example: provisioning/speed_dial_uri=speed_dial_list.txt
	Note:The speed dial file is downloaded after boot up and periodically
	If the speed dial file is new, the phone reboots.

3.3.1.2 445HD, 450HD, C450HD and RX50

On the 450HD and C450HD phones, 1-8 Function Keys are available in the idle screen, four keys on the left side of the screen and four on the right.

On the 450HD phone + Expansion Module and C450HD phone + Expansion Module, Function Keys 9-48 are available in the phone's sidecar to the right of the phone's physical interface. In the Configuration File, the keys are labeled 8-47.

On the RX50, 1-6 Programmable Keys are available from the **Menu** softkey > **Keys**.

On the 445HD phone, all keys 1-33 can be configured as Speed Dial, Paging, Key Event or VocaNOM.

3.3.1.2.1 Saving Configured Features in a cfg File

In the Web interface, after configuring features you can save the configuration in a cfg file on your computer and load it to other phones.

To save features in a cfg file:

In the Function Keys page (Configuration tab > Personal Settings menu > Function Keys), click Save Function Keys; the configuration is saved in a .cfg file.

3.3.1.2.2 Loading the cfg File to Other Phones

After saving the configuration in a cfg file on your computer, you can load it to other phones.

To load the cfg file to another phone:

- In the Function Keys page of another phone's Web interface (Configuration tab > Personal Settings menu > Function Keys), click Browse....
- 2. In the Choose File to Upload page that opens, navigate to and select the cfg file saved on your computer.
- 3. Click Load Function Keys; the file is uploaded to the phone.

3.3.1.2.3 Deleting a Configured Dial

To delete configured dials either:

- Select the 'Delete' check boxes corresponding to the dials that you want to delete and click **Submit**.
- Click **Delete All** and at the prompt click **OK**.
- Click **Reset** to clear (unselect) all selected 'Delete' check boxes.

3.3.1.3 Configuring a Function Key for Making a Discreet Call

This feature answers a requirement for more security measures such as a silent mode call for public institutions. If a call is made in discreet mode, it's a one-way call to a remote phone. The caller's phone does not indicate audially that a call is in progress. The phone's screen remains in idle mode and the backlight is not activated. The only indication that a call is in progress is the presence status of the caller changes to red (busy). The caller cannot end the call. It's recommended that the called party's phone be a dedicated phone to avoid the scenario of being on another call when needed for the discreet call; the phone automatically answers the discreet call; there is no need to pick up the handset. The called party then 'listens' to what's happening at the caller's end. When the called party ends the call, the call ends on both sides.

To configure a Function Key for making a discreet call:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameters using the table below as reference.

Parameter Name	Description
personal_settings/functional_key/X]/key_label	Configure a label for the key. The label is displayed in the phone's screen next to the Functional Key. Make it intuitive to facilitate easy and quick action in an emergency. The label should differentiate it from other Speed Dials.
personal_settings/functional_key/[X]/speed_dial_extension	Configure the extension of the authority in the organization to whom to make the discreet call.
personal_settings/functional_key/[X]/speed_dial_number	Configure the telephone number of the authority in the organization to whom to make the discreet call.
personal_settings/functional_key/[X]/type	Configure this parameter to DISCREETCALL .
personal_settings/discreet_call/enabled	 Enables or disables the discreet call feature. [0] Disable [1] Enable

Table 3-8: Discreet Call Parameters

• Both caller and called party phones must be AudioCodes phones.

• Device Lock must be disabled on the called party's phone

• The call runs via the Skype for Business server as a regular call when the phone tunes the behavior to match the required functionality.

3.3.2 Configuring Programmable Keys

This section shows how to configure a programmable key on the device using the Configuration File.

To configure a Programmable Key:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and use the tables below as reference.

Parameter Name	Description
personal_settings/functional_key/n/shared_line _index	n = 0-7 on the 450HD and C450HD; eight line keys can be configured.
	n = 0-5 on the RX50; six line keys can be configured.
	n = 12-17 on the 445HD; six line keys can be configured.
	Each can be configured as Key Type VocaNOM , Speed Dial, Discreet Call, Paging, Key Event or Empty .
	VocaNOM is a service that lets users vocalize a destination number to call, instead of manually dialing it.
	Speed Dial lets users quickly access and dial numbers they use often. Speed Dial indicates the presence status of people for whom speed dials are configured.
	Key Event lets users quickly access Calendar (default), Dialed Numbers, Missed Calls, Received Calls, Dialed Calls, Directory, DnD All or Forward All.
personal_settings/functional_key/n/type	 Each Line Key can be configured as type: VOCANOM SPEED_DIAL PAGING Discreet Call KEY_EVENT Empty
personal_settings/functional_key/ n/key_label	Displayed in the Web interface only if 'Key Type' is configured. Allows you to configure a label for the Programmable Key, e.g., the name of a person to whose phone number a speed dial will dial. The label is displayed in the phone's screen.
personal_settings/functional_key/n/speed_dial _number	Displayed in the Web interface only if 'Key Type' is configured as Speed Dial . Configure the telephone number of the contact to whom the speed dial will dial.
personal_settings/functional_key/n/key_event	Lets users quickly access CALENDAR (default), Missed Calls, Received Calls, Dialed Calls, Contacts, Hot Desking, DnD All or Forward All.

Table 3-9: Programmable Key Parameters in the Configuration File

3.3.2.1.1 Saving Configured Programmable Keys in a cfg File

After configuring Speed Dials, you can save the configuration in a cfg file on your computer and load it to other phones.

To save Speed Dials in a cfg file:

- Open the Programmable Keys page (Configuration tab > Personal Settings menu > Programmable Keys).
- 2. Click Save Programmable Keys; the configuration is saved in a cfg file.

3.3.2.1.2 Loading the cfg File to Other Phones

To load the cfg file to another phone:

- 1. In the Programmable Keys page in another phone's Web interface, click **Browse...**
- 2. In the Choose File to Upload dialog that opens, navigate to and select the cfg file saved previously on your computer.
- 3. Click Load Programmable Keys; the file is uploaded to the phone.

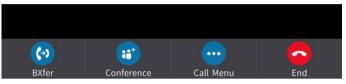
3.3.3 Configuring Programmable Softkeys for a Customized UI Experience

Users can configure Programmable Softkeys for **New Call** state, **Ongoing call** state and **Idle** screen state as part of the phone's capability of allowing a customized user interface experience.

Configurable idle screen

Administrators can customize the home screen in line with the preferences / requirements of enterprise management and / or the employees. A typical use for this feature can be the option to disable the **Meet Now** softkey and replace it with another softkey such as the **Received Calls** softkey or the **Calendar** softkey.

- Configurable ongoing call screen.
- Administrators can customize the ongoing call screen (shown in the figure below) in line with the preferences / requirements of enterprise management and / or the employees.

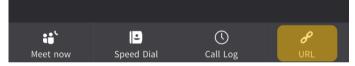


For example, the **BXfer** softkey in the ongoing call screen shown in the preceding figure can be replaced with the **New Call** softkey shown in the figure below on the phones of enterprise users who infrequently transfer calls.



Configurable initiate call screen

Administrators can customize the initiate call screen (shown in the figure below) in line with the preferences / requirements of enterprise management and / or the employees.



For example, the **URL** dialing softkey in the initiate call screen shown in the preceding figure can be replaced with the **Contacts** softkey shown in the figure below.

:	(•	U	
Meet now	Speed Dial	Call Log	Contacts

3.3.4 Configuring a Programmable Softkey to Allow Paging during an Ongoing Call | Call Hold | Call Park

Network administrators can allow users to perform paging during an ongoing call, call hold and call park. To enable the feature, administrators must program a softkey for users to use the functionality. The softkey is displayed in the ongoing call screen.



Paging must be configured as described in Section 3.4.17 as a prerequisite for the feature to function.

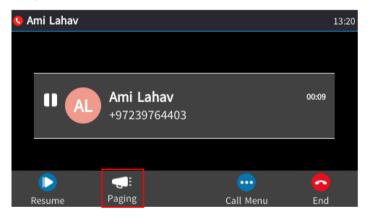
To configure a PSK for paging during an ongoing call | call hold | call park:

• Use the table as reference:

Table 3-10: Configuring a PSK for Paging during an Ongoing Call | Call Hold | Call Park

Parameter	Description
personal_settings/soft_keys/ongoing_call/n/key_f	Set to PAGING . Note that n=0-19.
unction	

Users will view a 'Paging' softkey in the phone's Hold screen (i.e., in the screen displayed when the user holds a call).



3.3.5 Configuring Tones

This section shows how to configure ring tones using the Configuration File and how to upload them to the phone.

3.3.5.1 Configuring CPT Regional Settings

It's important to match your phone's Call Progress Tones (CPT) to the country in which your phone is located. This section shows how to configure it.

To configure regional location:

 Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and use the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
voip/regional_settings/selected_country	Defines the country in which your phone is located. The behavior and parameters of analog telephones lines vary between countries. CPTs are country-specific. The phone automatically selects the correct regional settings according to this parameter. Supported countries are: [Israel] Israel [China] China [France] France [Germany] Germany [Netherlands] Netherlands [UK] UK [Brazil] Brazil [Italy] Italy [Argentina] Argentina [Portugal] Portugal [Russia] Russia
	 [Australia] Australia [USA] USA [India] India
voip/regional_settings/use_config_file_values	 Enables the user-defined CPT. When this parameter is enabled, the 'selected_country' parameter is not relevant and the CPT values below can be determined by the user. [0] - Disable (default)
	[1] - Enable
Call Progress Tones (CPT) Note: Up to 10 CPTs can be configured (voip/regio	nal_settings/call_progress_tones/09).
voip/regional_settings/call_progress_tones/%d/en abled	Enables the specific CPT. [0] - Disable [1] - Enable
voip/regional_settings/call_progress_tones/%d/na me	Defines the name of the CPT.
voip/regional_settings/call_progress_tones/%d/ca dence	 Defines the cadence type of the tone. [0] - Continuous signal [1] - Cadence signal [2] - Burst signal

Table 3-11: Regional Parameters

Parameter	Description
voip/regional_settings/call_progress_tones/%d/fre quency_a	Defines the low frequency (in Hz) of the tone. Range: 300 - 1980 Hz, in steps of 1 Hz. Unused frequencies must be set to zero.
voip/regional_settings/call_progress_tones/%d/fre quency_b	Defines the high frequency (in Hz) of the tone. Range: 300 - 3000 Hz, in steps of 1 Hz. Unused frequencies must be set to zero.
voip/regional_settings/call_progress_tones/%d/fre quency_a_level	Output level of the low frequency tone (in -dBm) in Call Progress generation. Range: 0 - 63, where 63 is mute.
voip/regional_settings/call_progress_tones/%d/fre quency_b_level	Output level of the low frequency tone (in -dBm) in Call Progress generation. Range: 0 - 63, where 63 is mute.
voip/regional_settings/call_progress_tones/%d/to ne_on_0	tone_on_0 to tone_on_3. If the signal is Cadence or Burst, then this value represents the on duration. If a Continuous tone, then this value represents the minimum detection time. In units of 10 msec. Range: 0 - 10000.
voip/regional_settings/call_progress_tones/%d/to ne_off_0	tone_off_0 to tone_on_3. If the signal is Cadence, then this value represents the off duration, in units of 10 msec. If not used, then set it to zero. If the signal is Burst, only tone_off 0 is relevant. It represents the off time that is required from the end of the signal to the detection time. Range: 0 - 10000.

3.3.5.2 Uploading Ring Tones

Ĭ

This section shows how to upload ring tones using the Configuration File.

- The ring tone file must be in WAV file format (A/Mu-Law, 8-kHz audio sample rate and 8-bit audio sample size or PCM 16-kHz audio sample rate and 16-bit audio sample size, Intel PCM encoding).
 - For the phone to use an uploaded ring tone, select it in the phone's screen (refer to the phone's *User's Manual*).

To define the Ring Tone File URI:

• Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and use the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
provisioning/ring_tone_uri	The URI for retrieving the ring tones file. The ring tones can be compressed to zip or tgz files and provided to the phone during provisioning.
	For example: provisioning/ring_tone_uri=tones.tgz
	Note:
	The ringtone file is downloaded only after boot up, and not periodically.
	 If the tones file is new, the phone updates the information, but does not reboot.

Table 3-12: Ring Tone File URI in the Configuration File

To select Ring Tones:

 Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and use the table below as reference.

Table 3-13: Ring Tones Parameter in the Configuration File

Parameter	Description
personal_settings/lines/0/ring_tone	Define the ring tone name. Default Range: Ring01 - Ring11 . Default Selection: Ring01 .
	Alternatively, you can select the name of a previously uploaded file, as in the example above (tones.tgz).

3.3.6 Configuring Phone Screen Settings

This section shows how to configure phone screen settings using the Configuration File.

The 445HD, 450HD, C450HD and RX50 screen contrast parameters apply only if Microsoft Skype for Business' online Power Save Mode feature is enabled, i.e., the parameters apply only to *online* users. They do not apply to Skype for Business *on premises* users. Three inband Microsoft parameters control Skype for Business's online Power Save mode:

- EnablePowerSaveMode [True] = the phone will use these Skype for Busingess timeout values instead of 'lcd_active_mode_timeout'.
- PowerSaveDuringOfficeHoursTimeoutMS [15 minutes]
- PowerSavePostOfficeHoursTimeoutMS [5 minutes]
- If inband provisioning is performed and all three Microsoft parameters are provisioned and the first is enabled:
- The second determines 'active mode' timout if in working hours.
- The third determines 'active mode' timout if in non-working hours.

The screen will change to 'night mode' only if the user is in non-working hours, i.e., the screen will never go lower than 'dimmer mode' when the user is in working hours. In the morning, when working hours start, the screen automatically changes from 'night mode' to 'dimmer mode'. The phone gets the user's work hours from Microsoft Exchange server. Users can configure a brightness level of High, Medium or Low for Active mode, Dimmer mode and Night mode. By default, the phone enters Dimmer mode after 15 minutes of inactivity; by default, the phone enters Night mode after another 60 minutes of inactivity. If the capability to determine working hours is configured, the phone only enters Night mode during non-working hours.

Dimmer mode is less bright than Active mode. Night mode is lowest. When a phone enters Dimmer mode, *LCD_Dimmer_mode_timeout* starts. When it expires, the phone switches to Night mode (which is allowed only during non-working hours if working hours are available). Any phone operation such as an incoming call or touching the screen causes the phone to exit Power Saving mode and revert to the regular screen brightness level.

To configure phone screen settings:

• Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and use the tables below as reference.

Table 3-14: Screen Contrast Parameters [445HD, 450HD, C450HD and RX50]

Parameter	Description
personal_settings/lcd_active_mode_brightness	Configures the brightness of the screen when its in 'active mode', which is - for example - after a calendar reminder pops up, or when a call comes in, or after you press a key on the dial pad, etc. LOW MEDIUM HIGH (default)
personal_settings/lcd_active_mode_brightness_high	Configures the HIGH level of brightness when the screen is in 'active mode'. Minimum: 0. Maximum: 31 (default).
personal_settings/lcd_active_mode_brightness_low	Configures the LOW level of brightness when the screen is in 'active mode'. Minimum: 0. Maximum: 31. Default: 20.
personal_settings/lcd_active_mode_brightness_medium	Configures the MEDIUM level of brightness when the screen is in 'active mode'. Minimum: 0. Maximum: 31. Default: 26.
personal_settings/lcd_active_mode_timeout	Defines the timeout of 'active mode', in minutes. If the timeout expires, the screen changes to 'dimmer mode' (see the next parameter). Either: 15 (default), 30, 45 or 60 minutes.
personal_settings/lcd_dimmer_mode_brightness	Configures the brightness of the screen when its in 'dimmer mode'. The screen changes to 'dimmer mode' after the timout configured for 'active mode' times out (see the parameter above). Either: LOW MEDIUM (default)
	 HIGH
personal_settings/lcd_dimmer_mode_brightness_high	Configures the HIGH level of brightness when the screen is in 'dimmer mode'. Minimum: 0. Maximum: 31 (default).
personal_settings/lcd_dimmer_mode_brightness_low	Configures the LOW level of brightness when the screen is in 'dimmer mode'. Minimum: 0. Maximum: 31. Default: 20.

Parameter	Description
personal_settings/lcd_dimmer_mode_brightness_medium	Configures the MEDIUM level of brightness when the screen is in 'dimmer mode'. Minimum: 0. Maximum: 31. Default: 26.
personal_settings/lcd_dimmer_mode_timeout	Defines the timeout of 'dimmer mode', in minutes. If it expires, the screen changes to 'night mode' (see the next parameter).
	Either: 30, 60 (default), 90 or 120 minutes.
personal_settings/lcd_night_mode_brightness	Configures the brightness of the screen when its in 'night mode'. The screen changes to 'night mode' after the timout configured for 'dimmer mode' times out (see the parameter above). Either:
	 LOW (default) MEDIUM HIGH There is no timeout for 'night mode'.
personal_settings/lcd_night_mode_brightness_high	Configures the HIGH level of brightness when the screen is in 'night mode'. Minimum: 0. Maximum: 31. Default: 26. There is no timeout for 'night mode'.
personal_settings/lcd_night_mode_brightness_low	Configures the LOW level of brightness when the screen is in 'night mode'. Minimum: 0. Maximum: 31. Default: 5. There is no timeout for 'night mode'.
personal_settings/lcd_night_mode_brightness_medium	Configures the MEDIUM level of brightness when the screen is in 'night mode'. Minimum: 0. Maximum: 31. Default: 20. There is no timeout for 'night mode'.

3.3.7 Configuring a Distinctive Ring Tone

The network administrator can configure a distinctive ring tone on the phone of a user. Distinctive ring tones help users audially distinguish between phones when calls come in, optimizing work efficiency.

To configure a distinctive ring tone:

• Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and use the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
voip/distinctive_ringing/0-4/ringtone	Select either: Ring01 (Default) Ring02 Ring03 Ring04
voip/distinctive_ringing/0-4/type	Not applicable to Skype for Business phones

Table 3-15: Distinctive Ring Tone Parameters

3.4 Configuring VoIP Settings

This section shows how to configure VoIP settings. Only the settings documented in this *Administrator's Manual* are applicable.

3.4.1 Configuring TLS/SSL over SIP

This section shows how to configure TLS/SSL over SIP using the Configuration File. TLS/SSL authenticates and secures communications over SIP using certificate-based authentication and symmetric encryption keys.

To configure TLS/SSL over SIP:

• Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and use the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
voip/signalling/sip/tls_method	Possible values:
	 ssl_2 ssl_3 ssl_2_3 (default) tls_1 tls_1_1 tls_1_2 Generally, set to the default because only the default allows for flexibility when selecting a mutually acceptable method. With all other values, the method is set specifically.
voip/signalling/sip/tls_disable	 Possible values: space separated list of values from above list. For example: "ssl_2 ssl_3" (default) Used only when 'tls_method' is set to ssl_2_3 because only the default allows for flexibility when selecting a mutually acceptable method. With all other values, the method is set specifically.

Table 3-16: TLS/SSL over SIP Parameters

3.4.2 Configuring TLS/SSL over SIPE

This section shows how to configure TLS/SSL over SIPE using the Configuration File. TLS/SSL authenticates and secures communications using certificate-based authentication and symmetric encryption keys.

To configure TLS/SSL over SIP:

• Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and use the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
voip/signalling/sipe/tls_method	Possible values: ssl_2 ssl_3 ssl_2_3 (default) tls_1 tls_1_1 tls_1_2 Generally set to the default because only the default allows for flexibility when selecting a mutually acceptable method. With all other values, the method is set specifically.
voip/signalling/sipe/tls_disable	 Possible values: space separated list of values from above list. For example: "ssl_2 ssl_3" (default) Used only when 'tls_method' is set to ssl_2_3 because only the default allows for flexibility when selecting a mutually acceptable method. With all other values, the method is set specifically.

Table 3-17: TLS/SSL over SIPE Parameters

3.4.3 Configuring an Outbound Proxy

Microsoft Skype for Business Server Multitenant Hosting Pack is a Microsoft[®] Unified Communications (UC) hosting solution for telecommunications and hosting providers. The solution enables Microsoft hosting partners to deploy a single instance of the Skype for Business Server software to securely and economically host multiple tenants with a rich, fully integrated UC solution. To connect the AudioCodes Skype for Business-compatible phone to a hosted Skype for Business environment, a dedicated 'Outbound Proxy' parameter is available which is used to configure the hosted service provider's domain name (FQDN).

()

In hosted environments, it's common practice that this hosted domain name is different to the enterprise's domain name.

To configure a phone for an LHP environment, configure the address of the Outbound Proxy as the hosted service provider's domain name (FQDN).

To configure:

• Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and use the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
voip/signalling/sip/sip_outbound_proxy/enabled	Determines whether an outbound proxy server is used (all SIP messages are sent to this server as the first hop).
	[0] Disable (default)[1] Enable
voip/signalling/sip/sip_outbound_proxy/addr	Displayed when the 'Use Hosting Outbound Proxy' parameter is enabled. Defines the IP address of the outbound proxy. If set, all outgoing messages (including Registration messages) are sent to this Proxy according to the Stack behavior.
voip/signalling/sip/sip_outbound_proxy/port	Displayed when the 'Use Hosting Outbound Proxy' parameter is enabled.
	Defines the port on which the outbound proxy listens. Range: 1024 to 65535. Default: 5060.

Table 3-18: Proxy and Registrar Parameters

3.4.4 Configuring IP Phone Office 365 Services via HTTP Proxy Support

Network administrators can configure One Voice Resiliency (OVR) IP phones to forward Office 365 services via an OVR embedded reverse proxy, to comply with enterprise security policy. The phone then forwards Office 365 HTTP services designated to port 80/443 (TLS), to AudioCodes' HTTP reverse proxy embedded within the OVR, instead of to the original destination (origin server), similarly to the way in which the phone directs SIP traffic to the OVR instead of directly to Office 365 SIP servers.

Two main components comprise the solution:

- IP phone: Responsible for directing Office 365 HTTP/S client traffic towards the trusted AudioCodes HTTP reverse proxy embedded within the OVR
- OVR + HTTP Reverse Proxy (server) responsible for forwarding the requests to the original address, i.e., the 'real' destination.

The figure below illustrates how the feature functions.

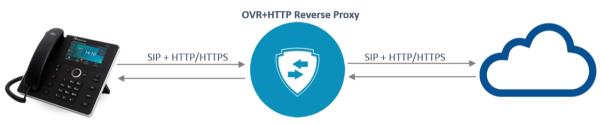


Figure 3-1: HTTP Proxy Functioning

To configure the HTTP Proxy:

Use the table below as reference.

Table 3-19: HTTP Proxy - Parameter

Parameter	Description
system/ac_http_proxy_ip	Defines the HTTP proxy's IP address. If left unconfigured, the feature will be disabled. Ports 80/HTTP and 443/TLS are used by default. This parameter requires the phone to be rebooted.

HTTP Proxy limitations are:

- The feature is only applicable to users who have the AudioCodes OVR VoIP application running on AudioCodes' Mediant 800B or 1000B devices in their enterprise.
- Only IP phones behind the OVR can access the HTTP proxy
- The HTTP proxy feature is only applicable to users whose Microsoft Exchange server is online
- Some algorithms are functioning incorrectly

3.4.5 Configuring Dialing

This section shows how to configure Dialing parameters. Only the parameters documented in this section are applicable.

3.4.5.1 Adjusting the DTMF Level

Network administrators can adjust the DTMF level of the phone to suit personal requirements.

To adjust the DTMF level:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Table 3-20: Automatic Dialing Parameters

Parameter	Description
voip/audio/gain/dtmf_tone_signal_level	Range: 1-32. Default: 16

3.4.5.2 Configuring Automatic Dialing

This section shows how to configure Automatic Dialing using the Configuration File.

To activate automatic dialing:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameters using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
voip/dialing/auto_dialing/enabled	Determines whether automatic dialing is enabled (i.e., phone number is automatically dialed when you off-hook the phone).
	[0] Disable (default)[1] Enable
voip/dialing/auto_dialing/timeout	 Only displayed if the 'Activate' parameter is configured to Enable. Defines the timeout (in seconds) before automatic dialing occurs after the phone is off-hooked. When set to 0, automatic dialing is performed immediately. The valid range is 0 to 120. The default value is 15.
voip/dialing/auto_dialing/destination	Only displayed if the 'Activate' parameter is configured to Enable . Defines a number that will be automatically dialed when the phone is off-hooked. The valid value can be up to 32 characters.

Table 3-21: Automatic Dialing Parameters

3.4.5.3 Configuring Pause Dialing for a Speed Dial to an Ext. behind an IVR

Pause dialing can be configured for a Speed Dial to create a time break, typically requried for a Speed Dial which dials a destination extension number that is behind an Interactive Voice Response (IVR) system. You can configure a dial string that includes "," or "p" or "P" which indicates a pause in the dial sequence.

This section shows how to configure pause dialing using the Configuration File.

To configure pause dialing:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameters using the table below as reference.

Table 3-22: Pause Dialing

Parameter	Description
voip/services/pause_dialing/digit_duration	Defines the duration time for each pressed digit. Default: 100 [milliseconds].
voip/services/pause_dialing/digit_gap	Defines the duration time between two digits. Default: 300 [milliseconds].
voip/services/pause_dialing/pause_duration	Defines the time duration for each pause symbol. Default: 2 [seconds].

3.4.5.4 Configuring Default Audio Device

This section shows how to configure the Default Audio Device using Configuration File.

To select the default Audio Device:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
voip/answer_device	Sets the default audio device to answer or initiate a new call when no explicit audio device is set.
	For example:
	 When pressing the Answer softkey. When initiating a call by speed dial key, call history or phone directory. Answering talk event or auto-answer. When starting to dial in "on hook" mode.
	Valid values are:
	[SPEAKER] (default)[HEADSET]
voip/headset_only/enabled	Lets you control audio device usage. Lets you enable headset only, and disable the phone hook and the SPEAKER button.
	 [0] Headset only (default) [1] Disables the phone hook and the SPEAKER button. Leaves the headset as the only possible audio device that can be used.

Table 3-23:	Default	Audio	Device	Parameter
-------------	---------	-------	--------	-----------

3.4.6 Enabling Direct Voice Dialing

Users can use the AudioCodes VocaNOM voice dialing service to *directly* voice dial other parties by vocalizing their name. Additionally, the phone numbers of parties who are voice-dialed are displayed in the the Call Log from where users can redial. The feature powers up efficiency in organizations, increases productivity and improves users' telephony experience. Users can configure a key which they can press and then vocalize the name of the party to whose number the VocaNOM service will directly dial.

To enable voice dialing:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameters using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
voip/services/vocanom_server/enabled	Enables or disables the method on user phones.
	[1] Enables the method 'Use VocaNOM server directly'[0] Disables the method 'Use VocaNOM server directly' (default)
voip/services/vocanom_server/ip_address	Defines the IP address of the VocaNOM server. Default: 0.0.0.0
voip/services/vocanom_server/port	Defines the port number on the VocaNOM server. Its value must match Transport Mode.
	5060 for UDP, TCP5061 for TLS
voip/services/vocanom/transport_mode	 Defines the Transport Mode for sending SIP messages. TLS UDP TCP
voip/services/vocanom/label	Defines the name of the key configured as VocaNOM displayed in the idle screen, and the name displayed in the screen that opens after pressing the key. Default: VocaNOM
voip/services/vocanom/number	Defines the number to dial to the VocaNOM server. Default: None

Table 3-24: Enabling Voice Dialing



All parameters must be configured for the user's VocaNOM key to be activated.

3.4.7 Disabling the Phone Microphone

This section shows how to disable the phone's microphone, which by default is enabled. Enterprise's may require this restriction to enhance confidentiality in the organization. The feature can be disabled using the Configuration File.

To disable the microphone:

 Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Table 3-25: Disable Microphone Parameter

Parameter	Description
voip/audio/microphone/enable	Enables/disables the phone's microphone functionality.
	[0] Disable[1] Enable (default)

3.4.8 Configuring the TRANSFER Key to Perform Consultative Transfer

The phone's hard TRANSFER key by default performs blind transfer but you can change the default for the key to perform *consultative transfer*.

You need to reconfigure the parameter 'voip/signalling/sip/hk_blind_transfer/enable' as shown in this section.

To change the TRANSFER key functionality:

• Use the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

Table 3-26: Changing TRANSFER Key Functionality

Parameter	Description
voip/signalling/sip/hk_blind_transfer/enable	Changes the hard TRANSFER key's functionality from performing blind transfer (default) to performing consultative transfer.
	 [0] TRANSFER hard key performs Consultative Transfer [1] TRANSFER hard key performs Blind Transfer (default)

3.4.9 Enabling Semi-Consultative Transfer

You can enable semi-consultative transfer. The user will then be able to transfer the call after the party whom the caller requested to be transferred to, picks up the phone.

To enable semi-consultative transfer:

• Use the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

Parameter	Description
system/semi_attended/enable	 Enables semi-consultative transfer. [0] [Default] A asks B to transfer A to C. B puts A on hold, calls C, and waits until C answers. After C answers, B transfers the call from A. [1] A calls C and presses the Trans softkey when A hears the ringback from C.

Table 3-27: Semi-Consultative Transfer Parameter

3.4.10 Disabling the BXfer (Blind Transfer) Softkey

This section shows how to disable the **BXfer** softkey displayed by default in the phone's screen during a call. If the network administrator disables the **BXfer** softkey, **Hold** will be displayed instead. The **BXfer** softkey gives users an alternative way to perform Blind Transfer (see the *User's Manual* for more information on call transfer).

To disable the BXfer softkey:

• Use the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

Parameter	Description
voip/signalling/sip/sk_blind_transfer/enable	Enables display / removes display of the BXfer softkey in the phone screen when in a call.
	 [0] Removes display of the BXfer softkey when in a call; the Hold softkey is displayed instead. [1] Enables display of the BXfer softkey when in a call (default).

Table 3-28: Blind Transfer Softkey Parameter

3.4.11 Enabling Electronic Hook Switch

The phone supports the Electronic Hook Switch (EHS) DHSG feature. Calls can be answered and volume level can be changed with EHS-capable headsets. The feature is supported on the following headsets:

- Jabra[®] PRO 920
- Jabra[®] PRO 9450

The headset's base unit connects to the phone's headphone port. The Audio connector connects to the headphone's port. The management connector connects to the Auxiliary port using a DHSG cable which can be ordered from AudioCodes.

The feature can be enabled using the Configuration File. The feature allows users to handle calls, i.e., answer calls and change volume level, with EHS-capable wireless headsets at a distance from the phone.

To enable EHS:

• Configure the EHS parameter using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
voip/services/electronic_hook_switch/enabled	Enables the EHS DHSG-standard feature.
	[0] Disable (default)[1] Enable
	DHSG (Drahtlose Hör-Sprechgarnitur) is the protocol used to convert a wireless headset's internal control signals to a commonly supported standard, and which uses the special AUX port.
	Supported wireless headsets can be connected to the AUX port (in addition to the regular headset port). This allows the user to connect and disconnect calls by pressing the button on the headset. See under Appendix B for information about supported wireless headsets.

Table 3-29: EHS Parameter

The base unit of the headset connects to the phone's headset port, i.e., to the same port that all headsets' base units connect to. The Audio connector must be connected to the headphones port. The management connector must be connected to the Auxiliary port using a DHSG-standard cable which can be ordered from AudioCodes.

3.4.12 Disabling Audial Call Waiting Indication

This section shows how to disable the audial call waiting indication (beep progress tone) so that only visual indication for call waiting occurs. Audial call waiting indication can interfere with a conversation. This feature addresses the issue. If a user is in a call and a third party calls that user, the called user's screen visually indicates that a calling party is waiting: the incoming call icon flashes, the adjacent Programmable Key LED flashes, and the blue Ring LED in the uppermost right corner of the device flashes (see the *User's Manual* for more information).

To disable Call Waiting audial indication:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
voip/services/call_waiting/generate_to ne/enabled	Enables a call waiting audial indication (beep progress tone), which can interrupt a phone conversation.
	 [0] Disabled. If disabled, only visual indication for call waiting occurs. Call waiting is visually indicated in the called party's phone screen. If a user is in a call and a third party calls that user, the called user's screen visually indicates that a calling party is waiting. [1] Enabled (default)

Table 3-30: Call Waiting Audial Indication Parameter

3.4.13 Disabling Call Forward

By default, the call forward feature is enabled on all users' phones unless the phone is configured as a CAP, but the network administrator can disable the feature on phones if enterprise policy, for example, requires this.

To disable the call forward feature:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
voip/line/0/call_forward/enabled	 Configure either. [0] The call forward feature will be disabled and the Forward softkey won't be displayed in the phone screen. [1] (Default) The call forward feature will be enabled and the Forward softkey will be displayed in the phone screen.

Table 3-31: Call Forward Parameter

3.4.14 Configuring Busy on Busy

The phone signals a 'Busy Here' message when the end user who is being called has an active Skype for Business call (an active call using the phone or any other client the user is logged in with).

To configure Busy on Busy:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
voip/services/call_waiting/mode	 Configure either. [DISABLE] The call waiting feature will be disabled [ENABLE] (Default) The call waiting feature will be enabled [BUSY_ON_BUSY] If you're already in an active call on either the conference phone or Skype for Business client and a call comes in, the Busy on Busy feature rejects the coming call and plays a busy signal to the caller.

3.4.15 Configuring Disconnect if Handset On-Hooked after Putting Call on Hold

This section describes how to configure the phone so that when using the handset in a call, if the call is put on hold and the handset is then on-hooked, audio switches to the speaker and the call is *not* disconnected.

To maintain backward compatibility, users can set the ini file parameter 'voip/onhook_disconnect_when_held/enabled' to **1**. This causes the call to be *disconnected* in the above scenario, as it was in earlier versions.

To configure this:

• Use the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
voip/onhook_disconnect_when_held/enabled	When using the handset in a call, if the handset is on- hooked after putting the call on hold, the call is not disconnected and the audio is switched to the speaker. To maintain backward compatibility, users can set 'voip/onhook_disconnect_when_held/enabled' to 1 . This causes the call to be disconnected in the above scenario, as it was in earlier versions.
	 [0] Disable (default). When using the handset in a call, if the handset is on-hooked after putting the call on hold, the call is not disconnected and the audio is switched to the speaker. [1] Enable. When using the handset in a call, if the handset is on-hooked after putting the call on hold, the call is disconnected.

Table 3-33: Disconnect if Handset On-Hooked after Call Put on Hold

3.4.16 Configuring Media Streaming

This section describes configuring the Media Streaming parameters. Only the parameters documented in this section are applicable.

3.4.16.1 Configuring Quality of Service

This section shows how to configure Quality of Service (QoS) using the Configuration File.

To configure QoS:

• Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description	
voip/media/media_tos	Defines DS (Differentiated Services) containing a DSCP (Differentiated Services Code Point) value and an ECN (Explicit Congestion Notification) value.	
	DSCP is backwards compatible with ToS. ECN is not.	
	QoS in hexadecimal format, TOS is part of the IP header that defines the type of routing service to tag outgoing voice packets originated from the phone. It informs routers that this packet must receive a specific QoS. Values can be set in decimal (e.g., 184) or hexadecimal (e.g., 0xb8). The default value is 0xb8 (184).	
	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 +++++++ DS FIELD, DSCP ECN FIELD +++++ DSCP: differentiated services codepoint ECN: Explicit Congestion Notification	
	The network administrator must therefore take into account the two LSBs that are reserved for ECN, when setting the desired value for DSCP, e.g., for a DSCP value of 46 (EF), the proper value for this parameter should be 184 in decimal, or 0xb8 in HEX, which corresponds to '10111000'. For a DSCP value of 22 (AF23), this parameter should be set to 88 decimal or 0x85 in HEX ('01011000'). See RFC 3168 for detailed information.	

Table 3-34: QoS Parameters

3.4.16.2 Configuring Codecs

This section shows how to configure codecs using the Configuration File.

To define the codecs:

 Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameters using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
voip/codec/codec_info/%d/enabled	Determines the codecs that you want to implement and their priority. Up to five codecs can be configured, where the first codec (i.e., voip/codec/0/) has the highest priority. To make a call, at least one codec must be configured. In addition, for best performance it is recommended to select as many codecs as possible.
	When you start a call to a remote party, your available codecs are compared with the remote party's to determine the codec to use. If there is no codec that both parties have made available, the call attempt fails. Note that if more than one codec is common to both parties, you cannot force which of the common codecs are used by the remote party's client. To force the use of a specific codec, configure the list with only that specific codec.
	The %d variable stands for the priority:
	 [0] - Disabled [1] (default) - Enabled
voip/codec/codec_info /%d/name	Name of the codec. The variable <i>%d</i> depicts the index number of the codec entry and its priority, where the first codec (i.e. voip/codec/codec_info/0/name=) has the highest priority. The valid codec parameters are:
	 [SILK_8000 / SILK_16000] Skype's audio compression format and audio codec that can use a sampling frequency of 8, 12, 16 or 24 kHz and a bit rate from 6 to 40 Kbit/s. Compatible with Skype for Business Flexible bit rate High quality Variety of sampling frequencies Inband FEC and good resilience to packet loss
	Note: G.722 was the first priority vocoder in version releases prior to 3.0. When upgrading from releases prior to 3.0, the list of vocoders remains unchanged. To set the SILK to be the priority vocoder (inapplicable to the 445HD), restore the phone to its defaults or set the vocoder list differently so that SILK is added. This can be done manually or by provisioning.
	 [G722] G.722 (default) [PCMA] G.711 A-Law [PCMU] G.711 Mu-Law [G729] G.729
	For example, voip/codec/codec_info/0/name=G722.
	Note : Specific codecs require specific firmware files. For more information, refer to the <i>Release Notes</i> .

Parameter	Description
voip/codec/codec_info /%d/ptime	Length of the digital voice segment that each packet holds. The default is 20 millisecond packets, excluding G.723 which is 30 millisecond packets.
voip/codec/g723_bitrate	Low or high bit rate for G.723. [LOW] Low [HIGH] High (default)
voip/codec/g722_bitrate	 G.722 bit rate. [G722_64K] (default) [G722_56K] [G722_48K] Note: Currently, only 64bps is supported.
[system/activation_keys/ amr_coder	Activation key (string) required to unlock AMR coder (relevant for supporting firmware only).

3.4.16.3 Configuring Real Time Protocol (RTP) Port Range

This section shows how to configure the RTP port range.

To configure the RTP port range:

Configure using the table below as reference, and then click **Submit**.

Parameter	Description
voip/media/media_port	Defines the base port for the range of RTP ports which the enterprise network administrator must open on the network's firewall.
	Default: 4000
	Valid possible ports: If, for example, 6000 is selected as base port, the valid possible ports will be 6000-60120.

Table 3-36: Media Streaming - RTP Port Range

3.4.16.4 Configuring RTCP Extended Report

This section shows how to configure Extended Report for RTP Control Protocol (RTCP-XR) working mode.

To configure RTCP_XR:

 Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
Parameter voip/rtcp_xr/vq_statistics/mode	 Description Sets RTCP_XR working mode. Select either: [DISABLE] (default). In this state, no RTCP-XR events are retrieved from the phone and the SIP PUBLISH is not sent, regardless of the state of parameter 'qoe_publish_enabled' (see below). [EVENTS_ONLY]. In this state, RTCP-XR events with voice quality parameter calculations are sent internally on the phone every five seconds. Each calculation is made on the basis of these RFC 3611 parameters: BT=7, block length = 8SSRC of source, loss rate, discard rate, burst density, gap density, burst duration, gap duration, round trip delay, end system delay, signal level, noise level, Gmin, R factor, ext. R factor, MOS-LQ, MOS-CQ, RX config, JB nominal, JB maximum and JB abs max. The phone sends the summarized RTCP-XR events to the Skype for Business server / EMS via SIP SERVICE messages (in Genesis-SIP, SIP PUBLISH messages are used). [REMOTE_AND_EVENTS]. In this state, the phone sends RTCP-XR events to the remote calling party (i.e. party A sends these events to party B) every five seconds during the VoIP session. The phone sends the summarized RTCP-XR events to the Skype for Business server / EMS with server / EMS
	via SIP SERVICE messages (in Genesis-SIP, SIP PUBLISH messages are used).

Table 3-37: RTCP_	XR Parameter
-------------------	--------------

3.4.16.5 Configuring Media Bypass

Media bypass allows a phone to send media directly to the SBC or PSTN gateway, eliminating the Cloud Connector Edition (CCE) from the media path when possible, thereby reducing latency, the possibility of packet loss and the number of points of potential failure, and thereby improving voice quality.

The feature is only applicable:

- to Skype for Business online phones with one or more CCEs interconnected to SBCs or to gateways
- if enabled by inband provisioning parameter
- if the phone receives a valid bypassID from a CCE Web service
- to phones connected to CCE over an internal IP network [External phones do not have access to the CCE Web service – they're unable to connect to the media bypass service URL - so they cannot use media bypass and instead send media to the SBC / PSTN gateway through CCE Edge and Mediation servers]

Identical to media bypass for *on-premises phones* (already supported), except that bypassID is acquired by sending an HTTP request to the CCE URL instead of getting it from inband provisioning for on-premises accounts.

The feature is enabled by two inband provisioning parameters:

- VoiceDeploymentMode
 - <property name="VoiceDeploymentMode">OnPremOnlineHybrid
- HybridConfigServiceInternalURL
 - <hybridConfigServiceInternalURL>http://ccetestlab.info.cce.local/hybridconfig/hybridconfigservice.svc

The phone uses the feature only if 'VoiceDeploymentMode' is set to **OnPremOnlineHybrid**. The phone sends an HTTP GET request to the provided 'hybridConfigServiceInternalURL' and receives a 2000K HTTP response with the bypass' settings xml body containing the following parameters:

- bypassEnabled="true" or "false"
- internalBypassMode="Any" or "off"
- externalBypassMode="Any" or "off"
- bypassID="2cd1a522-b9c5-4410-8aed-f3eca85eb367"

The phone proceeds with media bypass only if

- bypassEnabled="true"
- one of the bypass modes equals "any"
- the bypassID is provided

The phone sends an HTTP GET request to get the media bypass properties once every eight hours, each time it receives the inband provisioning parameters.

3.4.17 Enabling Paging

This feature allows a live announcement to be made (paged) from a phone to a group of phones, to notify a team (for example) that a meeting is about to commence at a certain venue.

All Function Keys can be configured for paging, allowing the user to page multiple paging groups.



Applies to all phones. Does not apply to the HRS.

The paged announcement is multicast via a designated group IP address, in real time, on all idle phones in the group, without requiring listeners to pick up their receivers. The name of the group is displayed on phone screens when the paging call comes in. If the Barge-in feature (see the next section) is disabled (default), recipients of the paging call who are in calls can choose to reject it.

To enable Paging:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameters using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
voip/services/group_paging/codec	Sets the required codec. All the codecs used for regular calls can be used for paging. See Section 3.4.16.2 for supported codecs. Default: G722_8000.
voip/services/group_paging/enabled	 Enables or disables the paging feature. [0] = Disabled [Default] [1] = Enabled
voip/services/group_paging/end_income_paging _timeout	Sets the timeout, i.e., how many milliseconds must pass after receipt of RTP ends, before paging times out. Default: 800 milliseconds (8 seconds).
voip/services/group_paging/group/n-n/activated	Activates or deactivates for the pager and the paged parties a Speed Dial configured as a paging key.
	 [0] = Deactivated [Default]. Paging was deactivated for the key configured as paging dial, so the key will be a regular speed dial. [1] = Activated. Paging was activated for the key
	configured as paging dial.
	Note : n-n are the Functional Keys indexed in the Configuration File.
voip/services/group_paging/group/n-n /multicast_addr	Applies only if 'Key Type' is configured as PAGING . Enter the paging group's multicast IP address. Default = 224.0.1.0. For phones to be in a group, all must be configured with the same multicast address.
	Note : n-n are the Functional Keys indexed in the Configuration File.

Table 3-38: Paging Parameters

Parameter	Description
voip/services/group_paging/group/n-n /name	Defines the name of the group displayed in the phone's screen when there's an incoming paging call; the label defined in the Speed Dial or Programmable Key is also displayed. For phones to be in a group, all must be configured with the same name.
	Note : n-n are the Functional Keys indexed in the Configuration File.
voip/services/group_paging/group/n-n /port	Enter the group's port. Default: 8888. For phones to be in a group, all must be configured with the same port.

After enabling Paging, you can add each phone you want to include in the paging group (see the *User's Manual* for detailed configuration information).

3.4.18 Enabling Barge-in

This feature when enabled allows paging calls to interrupt (barge in on) phone conversations that are in progress, without prompting recipients with an option to accept or reject the paging call.

When disabled (default), those who are in regular calls when the paging call comes in are prompted in their phones' screens to choose whether or not to accept or reject the paging call. If it's accepted, the regular call will be put on hold and the paging call will be heard.

To enable Barge-in:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
voip/services/group_paging/allow_barge_in/ena bled	Lets incoming paging calls interrupt (barge in on) regular calls that are in progress.
	 [0] = [Default] Those in regular calls are prompted whether or not to accept an incoming paging call. [1] = Incoming paging calls interrupt (barge in on) regular calls that are in progress.

Table 3-39: Paging – Allow Barge In

3.4.19 Configuring the VocaNOM Service

VocaNOM allows users to voice-dial colleagues by articulating the full name of a colleague adding "Office" or "Mobile" when prompted. The solution then dials the requested party. The feature increases day-to-day work productivity.

For information on how to enable or disable the feature, see Section 3.4.6.



Applies to the 445HD, 450HD, 450HD and Expansion Module, C450HD, C450HD and Expansion Module, as well as to the RX50 conference phone.

To configure the VocaNOM service:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameters using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
voip/services/vocanom/number	Defines the number that the phone dials to access the VocaNOM server, either directly, or indirectly, via the Skype for Business server. Example: 7777
voip/services/vocanom/label	Defines the name that will be displayed in phone screens after users press their configured VocaNOM key to voice-dial another party using the VocaNOM service. Default: VocaNOM
voip/services/vocanom_server/enabled	 Can be enabled or disabled. The user's experience remains the same whether enabled (direct voice dialing) or disabled (indirect voice dialing). Direct or indirect voice dialing occurs in the background, so user experience is unaffected. When enabled (direct voice dialing), the call is forwarded directly to the server. When disabled (indirect voice dialing), the call is forwarded via the Skype for Business server. The VocaNOM server can be on premises or in the cloud. [0] Access to the VocaNOM server is indirect via the Skype for Business server [default] [1] Access to the VocaNOM server is direct
voip/services/vocanom_server/ip_address	Only displayed in the Web interface if the previous parameter (above) is enabled. Defines the VocaNOM server's IP address. The server can be either in the AWS cloud (Amazon Web Services) or on premises. Default: 0.0.0.0
voip/services/vocanom_server/port	 Defines the port number on the VocaNOM server. Its value must match Transport Mode. 5060 [for UDP, TCP] 5061 [default] [for TLS]
voip/services/vocanom/transport_mode	 Defines the Transport Mode for sending SIP messages. TLS [Default] UDP TCP

Table 3-40: Voice-Dialing Parameter Descriptions

3.4.20 Configuring a Dedicated Voicemail Server

This section shows how to configure a dedicated voicemail server for the enterprise, as an alternative option to Microsoft Exchange Server.

To configure a dedicated voicemail server:

• Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameters using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description	
voip/services/msg_waiting_ind/voice_mail_numbe r	Enter the number of the service to dial in order to retrieve voicemail.	
voip/services/msg_waiting_ind/enabled	 Configure either: [0] Disabled if a voicemail service isn't required. [1] Enabled (default) in order to use Microsoft Exchange Server for voicemail. AUDC_VM in order to use a dedicated voicemail server other than Microsoft Exchange Server for voicemail. 	
voip/services/msg_waiting_ind/subscribe	 [0] Disabled (default) configure this option if you chose in the previous parameter to use Microsoft Exchange Server for voicemail. [1] Enabled configure this option if you chose in the previous parameter to use a dedicated voicemail server, other than Microsoft Exchange Server, for voicemail. 	
voip/services/msg_waiting_ind/subscribe_address	Enter the IP address of the AudioCodes gateway or PBX on which the voicemail application is located.	
voip/services/msg_waiting_ind/subscribe_port	Enter the port number of the AudioCodes gateway or PBX on which the voicemail application is located. Default: 5060.	
voip/services/msg_waiting_ind/expiraition_timeou t	Defines how often the voicemail application is updated (refreshed) for new mail. Default: Every 3600 seconds (i.e., every hour).	

Table 3-41: Dedicated Voicemail Server - Parameters

3.4.21 Securing Voicemail Access by PIN Code Authentication

Network administrators can secure user access to voicemail with PIN code authentication so that when users press the voicemail button, they're prompted to enter their PIN code.

By default, the phone skips PIN code authentication and allows users direct access to voicemail.

To secure voicemail access:

• Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
voip/services/vm_skip_pin_code/enabled	 Configure: [0] Disable to secure user access to voicemail with PIN code authentication so that when users press the voicemail button, they're prompted to enter their PIN code. [1] Enable (default) for the phone to skip PIN code authentication and allow the user direct access to voicemail.

3.4.22 Setting up a Cloud User's Voicemail / MWI

This section shows how to set up a cloud (online) user's Voicemail / MWI (Message Waiting Indication). To set up a cloud user's Voicemail / MWI you need to configure their related cloud server settings. MWI configuration information is part of the SELF SUBSCRIBE/NOTIFY when the content type is **vnd-microsoft-roaming-self+xml**. The tokens in the XML message are **unreadVoiceMailCount** and **readVoiceMailCount**.

To set up a cloud user's Voicemail / MWI:

 In the Microsoft Office 365 server GUI, navigate to the 'Exchange Admin Center - Unified Messaging' screen as shown in the figure below (Home > Admin > Admin Centers > Exchange > Unified Messaging).

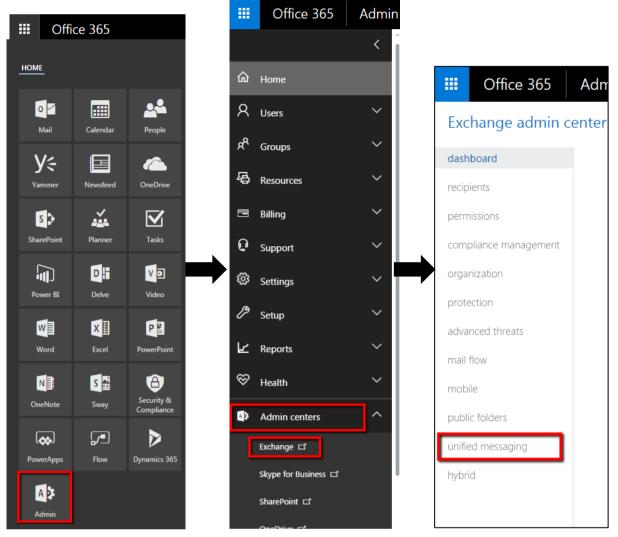


Figure 3-2: Exchange Admin Center - Unified Messaging

2. In the Exchange Admin Center – Unified Messaging screen (see the figure below), click the + icon to set up a dial plan.



You need to define a new dial plan for voicemail before performing the procedure below. The default dial plan must not be used. Figure 3-3: Setting up a Dial Plan

III Office 365	Admin		
Exchange admin c	enter		
dashboard	UM dial plans UM IP ga	teways	
recipients			
permissions	Unified Messaging dial plans define	the format for telephone numbers in your organization. For UM to answer calls for your users, you have to	o set up at least one dial plan. Learn more
compliance management	+ ∞ 🖮 🗲 …		
organization	NAME	EXTENSION LENGTH	URI TYPE
protection			
advanced threats	1		
mail flow	•		
mobile			
public folders			
unified messaging			
hybrid			

3. Set up the new Dial Plan with URI TYPE = SIP URI, as shown in the figure below.

Figure 3-4: New Dial Plan: URI Type = SIP URI

🖼 UM Dial Plan - Google Chrome		
Secure https://outlook.office365.com/ecp/UnifiedMe	essaging	g/NewUMDialPlan.aspx?Activit
new UM dial plan		
Use UM dial plans to manage the UM features for a group of users who are enabled for voice mail. Learn more	;	*
*Name:		
TestDialPlan2		
*Extension length (digits):		The dial plan type defines the syntax, format, and the
*Dial plan type: SIP URI	• <	protocols for calls. Dial plan types include: Telephone extension: 58493
*VoIP security mode:		E.164: +14255550123 SIP URI: name@domain.com
Unsecured	Ŧ	
*Audio language:		
English (United States)	•	
*Country/Region code:		
3 After you click Save, select this dial plan and click Edit to		-
	Sav	/e Cancel

4. Click Save.

Figure 3-5: Dial Plan: Rules and Settings			
🔩 UM Dial Plan - Google Chrome			
Secure https://outlook.c	office365.com/ecp/UnifiedMessag	ging/EditUMDialPlan.aspx?ActivityCorrelationID=c39c86ba-fff3-ff1f-7	
 Secure https://outlook.cd TestDialPlan2 general dial codes Outlook Voice Access settings dialing rules dialing rules dialing authorization transfer & search 	UM dial plans are groups of users	ging/EditUMDialPlan.aspx?ActivityCorrelationID=c39c86ba-fff3-ff1f-7 who are enabled for UM. They share common dio language, and dialing codes for incoming TestDialPlan2 7 SIP URI English (United States)	
		Save Cancel	

5. After setting up the UM Mailbox Policy, click the **Edit** icon shown in the figure below.

Figure 3-6: Edit

🔩 UM Dial Plan - Google Chrome		
Secure https://outlook.of	fice365.com/ecp/UnifiedMessaging/LauncherUMDialP	an.aspx?ActivityCorrelationID=39c
TestDialPlan2		
Configure settings for this dial plan groups.	, including UM mailbox policies, auto attendants, and hunt	*
UM Dial Plan		
Name:	TestDialPlan2	
Dial plan type:	SIP URI	
Extension length (digits):	7	
UM Mailbox Policies	ice Access, voice mail settings, and dialing rules for this dial	
NAME	MINIMUM PIN LENGTH	UM mailbox policies specify common PIN policies,
TestDialPlan2 Default Policy	6	features, custom message text, and dialing authorization for a group of UM-enabled mailboxes.
	1 selected of 1 total	
UM Auto Attendants ╋ 2 m ± ↑ 2		•
		Close

6. Make sure the MWI option is selected.

🛃 UM Mailbox Policy - Google G	Chrome	
Secure https://outlook	.office365.com/ecp/UnifiedMessaging/EditUMMailboxPolicy.aspx?ActivityCorrel	ationID=39c90e00-b
TestDialPlan2 Default ▶general		
message text	UM mailbox policies link UM-enabled mailboxes with a UM dial plan, and apply common settings. Set General mailbox policy settings on this page.	
PIN policies	UM dial plan:	
dialing authorization	TestDialPlan2	
protected voice mail	*Name:	
	TestDialPlan2 Default Policy	
	*Limit on personal greetings (minutes): 5 User features: Allow vice mail preview Allow users to configure call answering rules Allow message waiting indicator Allow message waiting indicator Allow outlook Voice Access Allow Nased call notifications Allow Play on Phone for voice mail Allow inbound faxes Partner fax server URI:	
	Help Microsoft improve voice mail preview:	
	Allow analysis of voice messages left by callers	
	Tell callers that voice messages may be analyzed	
	Save	Cancel

Figure 3-7: Enabling UM for Users

3.4.22.1 Enabling Unified Messaging

This section shows how to enable UM for the user.

To enable UM:

- 1. Connect with Admin user to the online server.
- 2. Access the Admin screen.
- 3. Navigate to Admin centers and select Exchange.
- 4. In the navigation pane on the left, select **Recipients** and under the **mailboxes** tab, search for the user.
- 5. Under 'Phone and Voice Features' in the pane on the right, click **Enable**.

Figure 3-8: Enabling UM

III Offi	ice 365	Admin				\$
Exchange	e admin ce	enter				
dashboard		mailboxes groups	resources contacts s	hared migration		
recipients						
permissions		ø demo	× 8 …			
compliance m	nanagement	DISPLAY NAME		MAILBOX TYPE	EMAIL ADDRESS	
organization		Demo2 Demo1		User User	demo2@audiocodesipprnd.onmicrosoft.com Demo1@audiocodesipprnd.onmicrosoft.com	Demo2
protection						User mailbox demo2@audiocodesipprnd.onr
advanced three	eats					Title: Office:
mail flow						Work phone:
mobile						Phone and Voice Features
public folders						Unified Messaging: Disabled

6. Click Browse as shown in the figure below, to browse to and select the UM Dial Plan you set

up previously.

Figure 3-9: Browse to the UM Dial Plan

🍇 Enable UM Mailbox - Google Chrome		
Secure https://outlook.office365.com/ecp/UsersGroup	s/EnableUMMailbo	x.aspx?ActivityCorrelati
Demo2		
Enable UM mailbox		
Select a UM mailbox policy for this mailbox.		
*UM mailbox policy:		
TestDialPlan2 Default Policy Bro	wse	
() Unified Messaging (UM) is a premium feature that requires an Exe Plan 2 license to enable it for the mailbox. Learn more	hange Online	
	Next	Cancel

7. Click **Next** and enter the user's SIP address and/or Extension Number, and enter the PIN if the checkbox is selected.

Figure 3-10: User's SIP Address and/or Extension Number, and PIN

😹 Enable UM Mailbox - Google Chrome 🔤	
Secure https://outlook.office365.com/ecp/UsersGroups/EnableUMMailbox.aspx?Ac	:tivityCorrelati
demo2	
Enable UM mailbox	
Choose a SIP address, an extension number, and a PIN for Outlook Voice Access.	^
*SIP address:	
demo2@audiocodesipprnd.onmicrosoft.com	
*Extension number (number of digits: 7):	
2106536	
*PIN settings:	
Automatically generate a PIN	
🖲 Type a PIN (minimum length: 6):	
Require the user to reset their PIN the first time they sign in	- 1
When you click Finish, UM sends an email message that contains the PIN and the access number for Outlook Voice Access to the user.	Ŧ
Back Finish Car	ncel

8. After the user is enabled and configured with a UM Dial Plan for VoiceMail indicator, the phone must be rebooted - or signed out and then signed back in again.

3.4.22.2 Troubleshooting

Use the figure below as a reference when troubleshooting issues related to setting up a cloud user's voice mail / MWI.

🕞 UM Mailbox Policy - Google Chrome	
Secure https://outlook.office365.com/ecp/UnifiedMessaging/EditUMMailboxPolicy.aspx?Acti	ivityCorrelationID=7de434ba-a
Secure https://outlook.office365.com/ecp/UnifiedMessaging/EditUMMailboxPolicy.aspx/Active TestDialPlan Default Policy general message text PIN policies dialing authorization Protect voice messages from unauthenticated callers: None Protect voice messages from authenticated callers: None Require Play on Phone for protected voice messages Allow voice responses to email and calendar items Message to send to users who don't have Windows Rights Management support:	Select "None" to allow unprotected voice messages, "Private" to let the caller set the protection level, and "All" to enforce protection. Protected messages can't be forwarded or copied, and the voice file can't be extracted from the email message.

Figure 3-11: Troubleshooting – Protected Voice Mail

3.5 Configuring Security

3.5.1 Using the Encryption Tool

AudioCodes' IP phones use the Triple Data Encryption Standard (3DES) algorithm for encryption. This section shows how to use the encryption tool.

3.5.1.1 Encrypting Configuration Files

This section shows how to encrypt the configuration file when, for example, it is sent over an unsecure network.

To encrypt the configuration file:

At the command line prompt, specify the following:

```
encryption_tool.exe -f <filename>.cfg
```

where *<file name*>.cfg specifies the name of the Configuration file that you wish to encrypt.

Once the Configuration file is encrypted, it receives the suffix '.cfx' (e.g. Conf.cfx). This is the file that you should specify in the 'Configuration URL' and the 'Dynamic Configuration URL' fields when performing automatic provisioning (see Part II 'Automatic Provisioning').

3.5.2 Encrypting Passwords in Configuration File

This section shows how to encrypt IP phone passwords used in the configuration process, for example, the 'System' password and the 'SIP Authentication' password.

To encrypt passwords:

1. At the command line prompt, specify the following:

encryption tool.exe -s <password string>

where *<password_string>* specifies the string of the password that you wish to encrypt.

Once the password is encrypted, a string is generated with the following syntax:

```
{"<encrypted_string>"}
```

For example:
{"0grNRpSJ6aE="}

2. Copy the generated string (including the {" "}) with the syntax specified above to the relevant parameter in the Configuration File.

For example, if you encrypted the SIP authentication password, the following is displayed in the relevant line in the configuration file:

```
voip/line/0/auth_password={"0qrNRpSJ6aE="}
```



It is recommended to encrypt the System password using this procedure. If you choose not to do so, then the System password is by default encrypted using MD5.

3.5.3 Managing Security Certificates

AudioCodes IP phones are loaded with factory-set preinstalled certificate files: private key file, certificate file and a Trusted Root CA file that is signed by AudioCodes.

Whenever the IP phone authenticates with a remote server, it can be authenticated using these certificate files. Each IP phone receives a uniquely generated private key certificate file based on its MAC address. If the remote server is configured to authenticate the client and AudioCodes factory-set certificates are used for authentication, then the AudioCodes Certificate and AudioCodes Trusted Root CA must be downloaded to the remote server. These files can be downloaded from the AudioCodes Web site. For more information, contact your local AudioCodes sales representative. If you use the AudioCodes Redirect server to obtain firmware and configuration files, then the factory-set certificates are used to authenticate the connection with this server. If default certificate files are missing or deleted, the phone will regenerate these files automatically the next time it is powered up.

3.5.3.1 Loading the Root CA Certificate to the Phone

The section shows how to load the root CA certificate to the phone. The certificate enables signing in with 802.1x Authentication. With Microsoft Skype for Business, more than one certificate file is loaded automatically using DHCP Option 43.

To load the root CA certificate to the phone:

Use the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
security/ca_certificate/0/uri=	The first root CA certificate loaded to the phone.
security/ca_certificate/1/uri=	The second root CA certificate loaded to the phone.
security/ca_certificate/2/uri=	The third root CA certificate loaded to the phone.
security/ca_certificate/3/uri=	The fourth root CA certificate loaded to the phone.
security/ca_certificate/4/uri=	The fifth root CA certificate loaded to the phone.

Table 3-43: Root CA Certificate Parameters

3.5.3.2 Loading the Client Certificate to the Phone

The section shows how to load the Client Certificate to the phone.

To load the root CA certificate to the phone:

Refer to the table below. You can also load the file/s to the phone using the Configuration File.

Parameter	Description
security/sip_certificate_uri	Downloads to the phone from this URI a Client Certificate for SIP TLS (SIP calls with Transport Layer Security).
security/sip_private_key_uri	Downloads to the phone from this URI a Client Private Key for SIP TLS (SIP calls with Transport Layer Security).
security/ieee802_1x_certificate_uri	Downloads to the phone from this URI a Client Certificate for 802.1X Authentication.
security/ieee802_1x_private_key_uri	Downloads to the phone from this URI a Client Private Key for 802.1X authentication. The certificate must be in .pem format.
security/autoupdate_certificate_uri	Downloads to the phone from this URI an external certificate that is used to secure the connection with the automatic provisioning server.
security/autoupdate_private_key_uri	Downloads to the phone from this URI a private key that is used to secure the connection with the automatic provisioning server.

Table 3-44:	Client	Certificate	Parameters
	CIICIIC	certificate	i ai ai i cici s

3.5.3.3 Enabling Server-side Authentication (Mutual Authentication)

You can enable server-side authentication of a connection with the RADIUS / LDAP and Provisioning server.



OpenSSL 1.0.1m is supported. This open source version supports SHA2 algorithms.

Parameter	Description
security/ieee802_1x/verify_server_certificate	Configures the phone to verify received server certificates over a secure EAP-TLS connection.
security/provisioning/verify_server_certificate	Configures the phone to verify received server certificates over a secure HTTPS connection with a provisioning server.
security/Idap/RootCAoverLDAP	 Controls whether or not use LDAP to search for a certificate. Valid values (bool): 0 [LDAP will not be used to search for a certificate] 1 (default) [LDAP will be used to search for a certificate]
system/ldap/TLSMode	 Defines the connection with the LDAP server. Valid values are: NONE - Defines an unencrypted connection with the LDAP server (port 389 is used by default) StartTLS (Default) - Defines a TLS/SSL connection with the LDAP server (port 389 is used by default OverTLS - Defines a TLS/SSL connection with the LDAP server (port 636 is used by default)

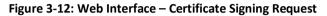
Table 3-45: Server-side Authentication

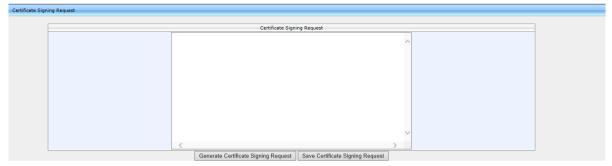
3.5.3.4 Generating a Certificate Signing Request

The section shows how to generate a certificate signing request (CSR) to send to the Certificate Authority (CA) for the CA to sign the Client Certificate.

To generate a CSR:

1. Open the Certificate Signing Request page (**Configuration** tab > **Security** menu > **Certificate Signing Request**).





- 2. Click Generate Certificate Signing Request; the phone creates a CSR file.
- 3. Click Save Certificate Signing Request and download the CSR file to your PC.
- 4. Send the CSR file to the Certificate Authority to sign the Client Certificate.
- 5. You can load the Client Certificate to the phone for 802.1X Authentication or SIP TLS.

3.5.4 Server Certificate Validation for Secured HTTPS Communications over SSL

This feature decreases vulnerability to breaches of security. If validation fails after installing phone firmware, HTTPS communication with Skype for Business and EWS servers are impacted, including but not restricted to Skype for Business auto-discover, contacts search, EWS auto-discover, Outlook Calendar, Authorization, etc.

The certificate is verified in two steps:

- The Root CA is installed using DHCP option 43, LDAP or the Web interface.
- The server's hostname is validated; for each certificate in the chain, the 'issuer' field in the certificate must match the 'subject' field of the issuer (uppermost in the chain) certificate.

To configure the feature:

Use the table as reference.

Table 3-46: Server Certificate Validation for Secured HTTPS Communications over SSL

Parameter Name	Description
security/SSLCertificateErrorsMode	 Disallow (default) = TLS connection will be rejected and the phone will not communicate with the server. Ignore = Allows backward compatibility though vulnerability will increase; the phone will proceed without checking the received certificates and without any notifications.

3.5.5 Configuring 802.1X Authentication

802.1X Authentication is an IEEE Standard for port-based Network Access Control (PNAC). It's part of the IEEE 802.1 group of networking protocols. It provides an authentication mechanism for devices joining a LAN or WLAN.

The employee's PC negotiates 802.1X. Messages are sent transparent to the enterprise switch. The IP phone is uninvolved in the negotiation, but if an employee's PC is disconnected, their IP phone notifies the switch. If an employee's PC is disconnected from the IP phone, a PROXY-EAP-LOGOFF mechanism lets the IP phone immediately log off the port from the authentication server in order to not let anyone else connect to it.

The phone performs like this:

- IP phone and PC connected to IP phone's PC port successfully perform 802.1X authentication. The authentication server records the IP phone and PC as authorized.
- If the PC is disconnected from IP phone's PC port, the phone sends an EAPoL-Logoff message for the PC. The authentication server then records the PC as unauthorized.
- If the PC reconnects to the IP phone's PC port, the authentication server requests the PC to perform 802.1X authentication again.

3.5.5.1 Using the Phone Screen

This section shows how to configure 802.1X from the phone screen.

To configure 802.1X:

- Open the 802.1X Settings screen (MENU key > Administration > Network Settings > 802.1X Settings).
- 2. Navigate to and select either:
 - **Disabled** disables the 802.1X feature
 - EAP-MD5 see Section 3.5.5.2
 - EAP-TLS see Section 3.5.5.3

3.5.5.2 EAP MD5 Mode

This section shows how to configure EAP (Extensible Authentication Protocol) MD5 mode for 802.1X Authentication.

To configure EAP MD5 mode for 802.1X:

- 1. Navigate to the EAP-MD5 option and press the Edit softkey:
- 2. Enter this information:
 - Identity: User ID
 - **Password:** MD5 password (optional)
- 3. Press the **Save** softkey; a message appears notifying you that the phone will restart.
- 4. Press Apply.

3.5.5.3 EAP TLS Mode

This section shows how to configure EAP TLS mode for 802.1X.

To configure EAP TLS mode for 802.1X:

Navigate to the **EAP-TLS** option and press the **Save** softkey.

3.5.6 Using the Configuration File

This section shows how to configure 802.1X using the Configuration File.

3.5.6.1 EAP MD5 Mode

This section shows how to configure 802.1X settings for EAP MD5.

To configure EAP MD5:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameters using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
network/lan/_802_1x/eap_type	Sets 802.1X Extensible Authentication Protocol mode
	[Disable] = Disables the use of 802.1X
	[EAP_MD5]=Authentication is implemented by user name and password (Password is optional).
network/lan/_802_1x/md5_identity	User ID for MD5 mode.
network/lan/_802_1x/md5_password	Password for MD5 mode (leave blank if no password).

Table 3-47: EAP MD5 Parameters

3.5.6.2 EAP TLS Mode

This section shows how to configure phone's 802.1X settings for EAP TLS using the Configuration File.

To configure EAP TLS:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameters using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
network/lan/_802_1x/eap_type	Sets 802.1X EAP mode.
	[Disable] = Disables the use of 802.1X
	[EAP_TLS]= Authentication is implemented by
	Certificate, Client Certificate, and Client Private Key.

Table 3-48: EAP TLS Parameters

Make sure the Root CA certificate and the Private Key certificate are installed on the RADIUS server as well.

3.5.7 Configuring HTTPS

This section shows how to configure the connection between AudioCodes' Device Manager and the phone using HTTPS, to secure communications.

To configure HTTPS:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Table 3-49: HTTPS Parameter

Parameter	Description
security/web/https_only	Enables the HTTPS protocol.
	[0] Disable (default)[1] Enable

3.5.8 Supported Encryption Ciphers and TLS Version



The 400HD Series of IP Phones is aligned with TLS version 1.2.

3.5.9 Support for Enterprise HTTP/S Proxy Servers

This feature enables phones in an enterprise to send packets via the enterprise's proxy server instead of sending packets directly to the server. The new support enables customers to leverage their proxy as security when accessing cloud services. The network administrator can configure the feature via the configuration file.

To configure HTTP/S proxy server capability:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameters using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
http_client/fwd_proxy/ip	Default: 0.0.0.0. Defines the proxy's IP address.
http_client/fwd_proxy/port	Default: 8080. Defines the port.
http_client/fwd_proxy/username	Default: 0. Defines the proxy username, for example, johnd .
http_client/fwd_proxy/password	Default: 0. Defines the proxy user's password. If 'username' is configured, then 'password' must also be configured, otherwise the same 'password' as it will not be taken from the domain's data.
http_client/fwd_proxy/direct/ip	Default: Local . When set to the default, phone HTTP requests destined for private IP addresses will not be sent to the forward proxy. If not set to the default, the phone will send all HTTP requests to the forward proxy (if its address is different to 0.0.0.0).
	Note: The IP Local/Private addresses are defined in RFC 1918.

Table 3-50: Configuring HTTP/S Server

Important:

- If the proxy server's username and password are not configured, the phone will use the NTLM domain's username and password.
- If 'username' is configured, then 'password' must also be configured as it will not be taken from the domain's data.
- To disable network communications going through the proxy server, the proxy IP address can be configured to "0.0.0.0".

3.6 Configuring Advanced Applications

3.6.1 Wi-Fi Capability

- Beta level
- Only applies to the 445HD and C450HD phones
- Only applies to 445HD-BW and C450HD-BW models
- Supported in specific regions such as the USA, Canada, the European Union, Switzerland, South Africa and Israel, and requires a specific CPN with a 'BW' suffix when ordering. For an updated list of supported regions, contact AudioCodes.

The phone can connect to an Access Point via Wi-Fi. The Wi-Fi interface can be used when the phone is installed in an environment free of LAN/cables, to perform VoIP calls over Wi-Fi. The phone can be connected by pressing the **Networks** icon in the phone's main menu -or- navigating in the 'Settings' menu and then selecting the **Wi-Fi** option.

3.6.2 Bluetooth

The phones support integrated Bluetooth for (wireless) USB headset connectivity.

- Beta level
 - Only applies to the 445HD and C450HD phones (to the 445HD-BW and C450HD-BW models).
 - Supported in specific regions such as the USA, Canada, the European Union, Switzerland, South Africa and Israel, and requires a specific CPN with a 'BW' suffix when ordering. For an updated list of supported regions, contact AudioCodes.

The feature is configured in the Settings screen (Menu > Settings).

- All Bluetooth headsets are defined by the phone as headsets and the phone's headset hard key onhooks / offhooks the headset.
- Connecting both the USB headset and the Bluetooth headset is currently not recommended.
- Known speakers such as the HRS 457, Jabra 710 and Jabra 510 are not defined as Bluetooth headsets. Users can define a known Bluetooth speaker as the phone's default Audio Device from **Settings** > **Audio Device**.

3.6.3 Dynamic URL Provisioning

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) can be used to automatically provision all phones in the enterprise. The DHCP feature can be configured using the Configuration File.

To configure DHCP:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameters using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description	
Note: To add a value to these parameters, enter provisioning / followed by the parameter name equals the value (e.g. provisioning/method=dynamic).		
provisioning/method	Defines the provisioning method:	

Table 3-51: Configuring Automatic Provisioning Performed by DHCP

Parameter	Description
	 [Disable] Disable - Automatic update is disabled. The phone attempts to upgrade its firmware and configuration [Dynamic] DHCP Options (Dynamic URL) (default) - Using DHCP options 160 or 66/67 for provisioning [Static] Static URL - Using Static URL for provisioning
provisioning/url_option_value	Determines the DHCP option number to be used for receiving the URL for provisioning. The default value is 160. The phone supports DHCP Option 160 for complete URL and Options 66/67 for TFTP usage. Option 160 has the highest priority and if absent, Options 66/67 are used. The following syntax is available for DHCP option 160: <protocol>://<server address="" host="" ip="" name="" or=""> <protocol>://<server address="" host<br="" ip="" or="">name>/<firmware file="" name=""> <protocol>://<server address="" host<br="" ip="" or="">name>/<firmware file="" name="">;<configuration file="" name=""> <protocol>://<server address="" host<br="" ip="" or="">name>/;<configuration file="" name=""></configuration></server></protocol></configuration></firmware></server></protocol></firmware></server></protocol></server></protocol>
	 Where <protocol> can be either "ftp", "tftp", "http" or "https" and where <configuration file="" name=""> can be either:</configuration></protocol> A unique configuration file, per phone, for example: <mac>.cfg -or-</mac> A global configuration file, per deployment, for example, 450HD.cfg
	Unique Configuration Example
	http://192.168.2.1/different.img; <mac>.cfg</mac>
	The retrieved firmware file is <i>different.img</i> and the configuration file name is <i><mac>.cfg</mac></i> such as 001122334455.cfg
	Global Configuration Example
	http://192.168.2.1/<450HD>.cfg
	The configuration file name is 450HD.cfg
	 The following syntax is available for DHCP Options 66/67: Option 66 must be a valid IP address or host name of a TFTP server only.
	 Option 67 must be the firmware name. If Option 67 is absent, the phone requests for the
	 450HD.img image file. For example: Option 66: 192.168.2.1 or myTFTPServer Option 67: 450HD_2.0.9.img
	Note:
	 This parameter is applicable only when method is configured to "Dynamic". It is recommended to leave the parameter at its default value to avoid conflict with other DHCP options settings.

Parameter	Description
provisioning/random_provisioning_time	Defines the maximum random number to start the provisioning process. This is used for periodic checking of firmware and configuration files to avoid multiple devices from starting the upgrade process at the same time. When the device is meant to start the upgrade, the device randomly selects a number between 1 and the value set for random_provisioning_time and performs the check only after the random time. The valid range is 0-65535. The default value is 120.
provisioning/period/type	 Defines the period type for automatic provisioning: [hourly] Hourly - Sets an interval in hours. [daily] Daily (default) - Sets an hour in the day. [weekly] Weekly - Sets a day in the week and an hour in the day. [powerup] On Power-up Only - The phone tries to upgrade only after power-up.
provisioning/period/hourly/hours_interval	The interval in hours for automatically checking for new firmware and configuration files. The valid range is 1 to 168. The default is 24. Note: This parameter is applicable only when type is configured to "hourly".
provisioning/period/daily/time	The hour in the day for automatically checking for new firmware and configuration files. The format of this value is hh:mm , where hh is hour and mm is minutes. For example, 00 : 30 . The default time is 00:00 . Note: This parameter is applicable only when type is configured to "daily".
provisioning/period/weekly/day	 The day in the week for automatically checking for new firmware and configuration files. [Sunday] Sunday (default) [Monday] Monday [Tuesday] Tuesday [Wednesday] Wednesday [Thursday] Thursday [Friday] Friday [Saturday] Saturday Note: This parameter is applicable only when type is configured to "weekly".
provisioning/period/weekly/time	The hour in the day for automatically checking for new firmware and configuration files. The format of this value is: hh:mm , where hh is hour and mm is minutes. For example: 00:30 The default time is 00:00 . Note: This parameter is applicable only when type is configured to "weekly".

3.6.4 Configuring Date and Time



By default, date and time settings are *automatically provisioned* via the enterprise DHCP server when the phone is connected to the Internet and to the power supply, but you can *manually* change them if required. This section describes how.

The phone automatically retrieves date and time from a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server when it is connected to the Internet. NTP is a protocol for distributing Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) by synchronizing the clocks of computer systems over packet-switched, variable-latency data networks.

You can configure Daylight Saving Time using the Configuration File.

To configure Daylight Saving Time:

• Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
system/daylight_saving/activate	 Determines whether the phone automatically detects the Daylight Saving Time for the selected Time Zone. [DISABLE] Disable (default) [ENABLE] Enable
system/daylight_saving/mode	Configures the date format. Valid values are: FIXED= Date is specified as: Month, Day of month. DayOfWeek = Date is specified as Month, Week of month, Day of week.
system/daylight_saving/start_date	This subsection defines the starting day for the daylight saving offset. [month] - defines specific month in year [day] - defines specific day in month [hour] - defines specific hour in day [minute] - defines specific minute in hour Example: To configure the phone to start daylight savings with a specific offset on February 22 nd at 14:30, set the following: system/daylight_saving/start_date/month=2 system/daylight_saving/start_date/day=22 system/daylight_saving/start_date/hour=14 system/daylight_saving/start_date/minute=30
system/daylight_saving/start_date/month	The month in a year. The valid range is 1 to 12.
system/daylight_saving/start_date/day	The day in a month. The valid range is 1 to 31.
system/daylight_saving/start_date/hour	The hour in the day. The valid range is 0 to 23.
system/daylight_saving/start_date/minute	The minute in an hour. The valid range is 0 to 59.

Table 3-52: Daylight Saving Time Parameters

Parameter	Description
system/daylight_saving/end_date	This subsection defines the ending day for the daylight saving offset. [month] - defines the specific month in a year [day] - defines the specific day in a month [hour] - defines the specific hour in a day [minute] - defines the specific minute in an hour For example: To configure the phone to end the daylight savings on July 16 th at 22:15, set the following: system/ntp/daylight_saving/end_date/month=7 system/ntp/daylight_saving/end_date/hour=22 system/ntp/daylight_saving/end_date/minute=15
system/daylight_saving/end_date/month	The month in a year. The valid range is 1 to 12.
system/daylight_saving/end_date/day	The day in a month. The valid range is 1 to 31.
system/daylight_saving/end_date/hour	The hour in the day The valid range is 0 to 23.
system/daylight_saving/end_date/minute	The minute in an hour. The valid range is 0 to 59.
system/daylight_saving/offset	The offset value for the daylight saving. The valid range is 0 to 180. The default offset is 60.
system/daylight_saving/start_date/week	Relevant to 'Day of week' mode: The week of month (values 1-5) for start of daylight saving time.
system/daylight_saving/start_date/day_of_week	Relevant to 'Day of week' mode: The day of week for daylight saving time start Valid values : [SUNDAY] [MONDAY] [TUESDAY] [WEDNESDAY] [THURSDAY] [FRIDAY] [SATURDAY]
system/daylight_saving/end_date/week	Relevant to 'Day of week' mode: The week of month (values 1-5) for end of daylight saving time.

Parameter	Description
system/daylight_saving/end_date/day_of_week	Relevant to 'Day of week' mode:
	The day of week for daylight saving time start
	Valid values :
	[SUNDAY] (Default)
	[MONDAY]
	[TUESDAY]
	[WEDNESDAY]
	[THURSDAY]
	[FRIDAY]
	[SATURDAY]

3.6.4.1 Configuring NTP Server

The Network Time Protocol (NTP) server can be configured using the Configuration File.

To configure the NTP server:

• Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
system/ntp/enabled	Enables the NTP server from which the phone retrieves the date and time.
	 [0] Disable (default) [1] Enable – obtains the time information from a configured NTP server
system/ntp/primary_server_address	Defines the address of the main NTP server. This can be a domain name, e.g., tick.nap.com.ar . You can select from the dropdown or leave the dropdown as User defined and manually define your domain in the adjacent field.
system/ntp/secondary_server_address	Defines the address of the secondary NTP server.
system/ntp/sync_time	This sub-section defines how often the phone must perform an update with the NTP server.
	 [days] - defines the number of days [hours] - defines the number of hours
	For example: To configure the phone to perform an update with an NTP server every 1 day and 6 hours, set the following:
	system/ntp/sync_time/days=1
	system/ntp/sync_time/hours=6
system/ntp/sync_time/days	The number of days.
	The valid range is 0 to 7. The default of days is 0.
system/ntp/sync_time/hours	The number of hours.
	The valid range is 0 to 24. The default is 12.
system/ntp/time_display_format	The format of the time displayed on the phone screen.
	[24Hour] (default)[12Hour]

Table	3-53:	NTP	Server	Parameters
TUDIC	5 55.		301001	i arameters

To enable the NTP server in the phone's screen:

- 1. Open the Date and Time screen (MENU key > Settings > Date and Time).
- 2. If not already **Enabled**, select the **NTP Server** option.
- 3. Enter the password and then choose the **OK** softkey; the NTP server is enabled.

3.6.4.2 Configuring NTP Server via DHCP

If the phone is set to obtain GMT offsets and NTP servers via DHCP (default), it receives the following fields in the DHCP options:

Primary Server and Secondary Server – (Option 4 or 42).



If both options (4 and 42) are received, the higher priority is given to Option 42.

Time Zone – (Option 2) (see the table below for more information)

The phone sends an NTP request to the Primary NTP server. If there is no response, the NTP request is sent to the Secondary NTP server.

After obtaining the time from the server, it adds the GMT offset in Option 2. This is the updated system time.

To manually configure NTP / GMT offset:

Configure the NTP and Time Settings using the table below as reference.



If the 'Obtain Time Zone from DHCP' parameter is set to **Disabled**, only the Primary Server NTP server parameter will be modifiable.

Parameter	Description
system/ntp/gmt_offset	 Default is 00:00 Enables the NTP server from which the phone retrieves the date and time. [0] Disable [1] Enable – obtains the time information from a configured NTP server
network/lan/dhcp/ntp/server_list/enabled	Enables prioritization of the NTP server's information received from the DHCP server (Option fields 42 or 4), over the static configuration (system/ntp/primary_server_address and system/ntp/secondary_server_address). [0] Disable
network/lan/dhcp/ntp/gmt_offset/enabled	 [1] Enable (default) Enables prioritization of the NTP GMT offset information received from the DHCP server (Option field 2), over the static configuration (system/ntp/gmt_offset). [0] Disable [1] Enable (default)

Table 3-54: NTP Server and GMT Parameters

Time Zone	Place
(GMT-12:00)	Eniwetok, Kwajalein
(GMT-11:00)	Midway Is, Samoa
(GMT-10:00)	Hawaii
(GMT-09:00)	Alaska
(GMT-08:00)	Pacific Time (US & Canada
(GMT-07:00)	Chihuahua, Mazatlan, Mountain Time (US & Canada
(GMT-06:00)	Central Time (US & Canada
(GMT-05:00)	Eastern Time (US & Canada
(GMT-04:00)	Atlantic Time (Canada
(GMT-03:30)	Newfoundland, Buenos Aires, Georgetown, Brasilia, Greenland
(GMT-03:00)	Buenos Aires, Georgetown, Brasilia, Greenland
(GMT-02:00)	Mid-Atlantic
(GMT-01:00)	Azores, Cape Verde Is
(GMT 00:00)	Greenwich Mean Time: Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, London, Casablanca, Monrovia
(GMT+01:00)	Amsterdam, West Central Africa, Madrid, Paris, Vilnius, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Vienna, Prague
(GMT+02:00)	Cairo, Jerusalem, Bucharest, Helsinki, Riga, Tallinn, Athens, Istanbul, Minsk, Harare, Pretoria
(GMT+03:00)	Kuwait, Riyadh, Nairobi, Baghdad, Moscow, St. Petersburg, Volgograd
(GMT+03:30)	Tehran
(GMT+04:00)	Abu Dhabi, Muscat, Baku, Tbilisi, Kabul
(GMT+05:00)	Islamabad, Karachi, Tashkent, Yekaterinburg
(GMT+05:30)	Bombay, Calcutta, Madras, New Delhi
(GMT+05:45)	Kathmandu
(GMT+06:00)	Almaty, Dhaka, Colombo, Almaty, Novosibirsk
(GMT+06:30)	Rangoon
(GMT+07:00)	Bangkok, Hanoi, Jakarta, Krasnoyarsk
(GMT+08:00)	Beijing, Chongqing, Hong Kong, Urumqi, Perth, Singapore, Taipei, Irkutsk, Ulaan Bataar
(GMT+09:00)	Osaka, Sapporo, Tokyo, Seoul, Yakutsk
(GMT+09:30)	Darwin, Adelaide
(GMT+10:00)	Canberra, Melbourne, Sydney, Brisbane, Guam, Port Moresby, Hobart, Vladivostok
(GMT+11:00)	Magadan, Solomon Is, New Caledonia
(GMT+12:00)	Fiji, Kamchatka, Marshall Is, Auckland, Wellington
(GMT+13:00)	Nuku'alofa

Table 3-55: Time Zones

3.6.5 Configuring Contacts (LDAP)

This section shows how to configure Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) using the Configuration File.



It's recommended not to change the default setup.

LDAP is an application protocol for accessing and maintaining distributed directory information services over an IP network.

See RFC 4510 for a full description.

To configure LDAP:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameters using the table below as reference.

Parameter Name	Description
system/ldap/enabled	Enables or disable LDAP.
system/ldap/server_address	Defines the IP address or URL of the LDAP server.
system/ldap/port	Defines the LDAP service port.
system/ldap/user_name	Defines the user name used for the LDAP search request.
system/ldap/password	Defines the password of the search requester.
system/ldap/base	Defines the access point on the LDAP tree.
system/ldap/name_filter	 Specifies your search pattern for name look ups. For example: When you type in the following field: (&(telephoneNumber=*)(sn=%)), the search result includes all LDAP records, which have the 'telephoneNumber' field set and the '("sn">surname)' field starting with the entered prefix. When you type in the following field: (/(cn=%)(sn=%)), the search result includes all LDAP records which have the ("cn">CommonName) OR ("sn">Surname) field starting with the entered prefix. When you type in the field (!(cn=%)), the search result includes all LDAP records which "do not" have the "cn" field starting with the entered prefix.
system/ldap/name_attrs	Specifies the LDAP name attributes setting, which can be used to specify the "name" attributes of each record which is returned in the LDAP search results. When you type in the following field, for example, <i>cn sn</i> <i>displayName</i> ", this requires you to specify 'cn >commonName'. This is the Full name of the user, sn >Surname, last name or family name and "displayName" fields for each LDAP record.

Table 3-56: LDAP Parameters

Parameter Name	Description
system/ldap/number_filter	Specifies your search pattern for number look ups.
	When you type in the following field, for example, (/(telephoneNumber=%)(Mobile=%)(ipPhone=%)), the search result is all LDAP records which have the "telephoneNumber" OR "Mobile" OR "ipPhone" field match the number being searched.
	When you type in the following field: (&(telephoneNumber=%)(sn=*)), the search result is all LDAP records which have the "sn" field set and the "telephoneNumber" match the number being searched.
system/ldap/number_attrs	Specifies the LDAP number attributes setting, which can be used to specify the "number" attributes of each record which is returned in the LDAP search results.
	When you type in the following field, for example, <i>Mobile telephoneNumber ipPhone</i> , you must specify 'Mobile', 'telephoneNumber' and 'ipPhone' fields for each LDAP record.
system/ldap/display_name	Specifies the format in which the "name, e.g. "Mike Black" of each returned search result is displayed on the IPPHONE.
	When you type in the following field, for example:%sn, %givenName, the displayed result returned should be "Black, Mike".
system/ldap/max_hits	Specifies the maximum number of entries expected to be sent by the LDAP server (this parameter is sent to the LDAP server).
system/ldap/sorting_result	Sorts the search result by display name on the client side.
system/ldap/predict_text	This parameter appears in the configuration file; however, it is currently not supported.
system/ldap/search_timeout	The time out value for LDAP search (this parameter is sent to the LDAP server).
system/ldap/ui/use_right_arrow_active_search	This parameter appears in the configuration file; however, it is currently not supported.
system/ldap/lookup_incoming_call	This parameter appears in the configuration file; however, it is currently not supported.
system/ldap/call_lookup	Performs an LDAP search during call (search the display name for a number).
system/ldap/country_code	Defines the country code prefix added for number search.
system/ldap/area_code	Defines the area code prefix added for number search.
system/ldap/minimal_name_search_length	Starts to perform an LDAP search after x characters are input.
system/ldap/send_queries_while_typing	Sends an LDAP search each time the user presses a key (all keys with both number and letters).

3.6.6 Configuring T9

When searching for a contact in the Corporate Directory, users can press dial pad keys *to input letters*. Only a single press on any key, regardless of the letter's position on the key, is necessary

See the phone's User's Manual for more information.

To configure T9:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Table 3-57: T9 Parameter

Parameter Name	Description
lync/contact_search_t9_enabled	Enables or disable T9 mode. Default= Enable .

3.6.7 Configuring the Caller Name to be Displayed

Network administrators can configure the caller's name to be displayed from the incoming SIP message's "From" header or from information in the Active Directory (default).

To configure the feature:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Parameter Name	Description
lync/contact_name_priority	 CONTACT_SEARCH (Default) = phone displays the caller name from the Active Directory's information CALL_DESCRIPTION = phone displays caller name from the incoming SIP message's "From" header

Table 3-58: Caller Name to be Displayed

4 Configuring Microsoft Skype for Business Features

This section shows how to configure Microsoft Skype for Business features.

4.1 Microsoft Screen Theme



Applies only to the 450HD and C450HD phone.

The screen theme by default reflects Microsoft Skype for Business 2016 client look & feel but network administrators can opt to switch from the default to the legacy by changing the *personal_settings/ui_theme* parameter from MSFT_THEME to AUDIOCODES_THEME.

4.2 Configuring Phone Status and User Status Timeouts

Network administrators can configure how long it takes for the phone status to change from 'Inactive' to 'Away', using parameter lync/presence/state_change_timeout.

Network administrators can also configure how long it takes for the user's status to change from 'Available' to 'Inactive', using parameter lync/presence/state_inactive_timeout.

Default for both parameters: 300 seconds (five minutes).

Range for both parameters: 300 seconds – 2073600 seconds (24 days).

4.3 Park Call

The IP phone lets users park a call, i.e., transfer a call to a "parking lot" for it to be picked up on any other phone in the enterprise by a party who must dial a retrieval number in order to retrieve it on that phone. The retrieval number is configured in the Skype for Business server's parking lot parameter. The retrieval number can be changed if required.

To pre-configure Microsoft's Skype for Business server for park call capability, see:

http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/gg399014.aspx

Refer to all subsections.

4.4 Music on Hold (MoH)

If a user puts a call on hold to answer an incoming call or to make another call, the party put on hold can hear music played. The Play Music on Hold feature allows this. By default, the Play MoH feature is not enabled in Skype for Business.

To enable the MoH feature on the Skype for Business server:

 In the Skype for Business Server Management Shell, run the following command in order to view the current settings of the client policy:

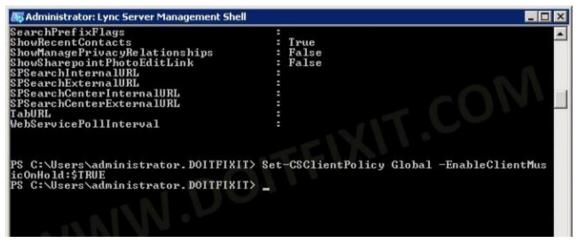
Get-CSClientPolicy Global



 Note that the EnableClientMusicOnHold parameter is set to FALSE. Run the following command to set it to TRUE:

Set-CSClientPolicy Global -EnableClientMusicOnHold:\$TRUE

But note that in case the phone and PC client are connected with same user, the Skype for Business PC client setting is "stronger" than the phone setting (in case of collision).



3. To prevent users from selecting or changing the music played on hold, run the following command defining the audio file:

```
Set-CSClientPolicy -EnableClientMusicOnHold:$TRUE -
MusicOnHoldAudioFile <Audio file Path>
```

To choose the music to be played on the IP phone:

- 1. Open the ini configuration file in an editor like Notepad.
- 2. Configure the 'lync/moh/url' parameter with the required file transport (TFTP). The format supported by the IP phone is:
 - WAV linear 16k 16 bit -OR-
 - WAV a/u law
- 3. Save and close the file and load it to the phone.

The maximum file size allowed is 300Kb. If it exceeds 300Kb, loading it will fail.

4.5 Configuring Timeouts for Presence Status Changes

Network administrators can configure how it will take for user presence status to change from

- 'Available' to 'Inactive' (use the table below as reference)
- Inactive' to 'Away' (use the table below as reference)

Table 4-1: Presence Status Timeout Parameters

Parameter Name	Description
lync/presence/state_change_timeout	Configures how long it will take for presence status to change from 'Available' to 'Inactive'
	Min: 0 seconds; Default: 300 seconds (5 minutes); Max: 2073600 seconds (24 days)
lync/presence/state_inactive_timeout	Configures how long it will take for presence status to change from 'Inactive' to 'Away'
	Min: 0 seconds; Default: 300 seconds (5 minutes); Max: 2678400 seconds (31 days)

4.6 Group Call Pickup (GCP)

GCP lets an employee take a call coming in on a colleague's phone, on their phone. If an employee in an open space hears a colleague's phone ringing and knows that colleague is unavailable, instead of having the call go unanswered and routed to Voice Mail, the call can be redirected and answered by the available employee. Only employees configured in the Skype for Business server's GCP parameter can pick up the call.

To pre-configure Microsoft's Skype for Business server for GCP capability, see:

http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/jj945645.aspx

Refer to all subsections.

4.7 Location

This feature enables the called party to identify the geographical location of the calling party. For example, if a caller in the U.S. makes an emergency call to E911, the feature extracts the caller's information for the police department to immediately identify the caller's location.

To enable users for E9-1-1:

http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/gg425892.aspx

To define Location Policy in Microsoft's Skype for Business server, see:

http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/gg398962.aspx

4.8 Configuring Skype for Business Server for SRTP / TLS

This section shows how to configure Microsoft Skype for Business Server for Secure Real-Time Transport Protocol (SRTP) / TLS, if it isn't configured already.

To configure Microsoft Skype for Business Server for SRTP/TLS:

- 1. Open the Microsoft Skype for Business Server management interface.
- 2. Configure a 'Route' on the Skype for Business Server.
- 3. Open the server's Edit Trunk Configuration Global screen.

Figure 4-1: Skype for Business Server - Edit Trunk Configuration - Global

0
-

- 4. Select the Enable media bypass option.
- 5. Select one of the following options from the the 'Encryption Support Level' dropdown:
 - **Required** SRTP encryption will be used to help protect traffic between the Mediation Server and the gateway or private branch exchange (PBX).
 - Optional SRTP encryption will be used if the service provider or equipment manufacturer supports it.
 - Not Supported SRTP encryption is not supported by the service provider or equipment manufacturer and will therefore not be used.
- 6. The option selected depends on customer configuration / requirements.
 - If you set 'Encryption Support Level' to **Optional**, make sure the encryption is enabled in PowerShell (<u>https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/2761579</u>):

```
Get-CsMediaConfiguration |Set-CsMediaConfiguration -
EncryptionLevel SupportEncryption
Identity : Global
EnableQoS : False
EncryptionLevel : SupportEncryption
EnableSiren : False
MaxVideoRateAllowed : VGA600K
```

4.9 Updating Device Firmware from the Skype for Business Server

The phone's firmware version can be updated from the Skype for Business server.

For more information on the firmware update process, refer to <u>https://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/gg398861.aspx/.</u>

Figure 4-2 shows Microsoft's Lync Server 2013 page from which the phone's firmware version is updated. The same concept applies to the Skype for Business server page.

Home	Client Policy	Version Client Version Configuration	Denice Uplate Test Denice	Device Log Device Moi Configuration Moi	suity Policy Push Notification Configuration
Users					
Topology				Q	
IM and Pres	ence		-		
Persistent C		Edit * Action * (Device type	Refresh Model	Locals	Posi
		3912	420HD	ENU	WebServer:LyncPool2013.ac5pi
Voice Routi		3PIP	405	ENU	WebServer LyncPool2013 ac5pt
200 CONSTRUCTION		3PIP	440HD	ENU	WebServer LyncPool2013.ac5pi
Response G		UCPhone	4120	ENU	WebServer LynePool2013 ac5pi
Conferencia	6	UCPhone	4110	ENU	WebServer LyncPool2013 ac5pt
Chents		UCPhone	4120	ENU	WebServer LyncPool2013 ac5pi
Federation : External Ac	2.00	UCPhone	4110	ENU	WebServer LyncPool2013 ac5pt
Monitoring		UCPhone	4120	ENU	WebServer:LyncPool2013.ac5pt
and Archivi	e 1	UCPhone	4110	ENU	WebServerLyncPool2013 ac5pi
Security		UCPhone	CX600	ENU	WebServer LyncPool2013 ac5pt
 Network Configuration 		UCPhone	C30600	ENU	WebServer LyncPool2013 ac5pt
		UCPhone	CX600	ENU	WebServer LyncFool2013.ac5pt
		UCPhone	CX600	ENU	WebServer LyncPool2013 ac5pi
		UCPhone	CX500	ENU	WebServerLyncPool2013.ac5pi
		UCPhone	C3(500	ENU	WebServer LyncPool2013 ac5pt
		UCPhone	C3C500	ENU	WebServer:LyncPool2013 ac5pi
		UCPhone	C3C500	ENU	WebServer LyncPool2013 ac5pi
		UCPhone	CX3000	ENU	WebServer LyncPool2013 ac5pi
		UCPhone	CX3000	ENU	WebServer LyncPool2013 ac5pi
		UCPhone	CX(3000	ENU	WebServer LyncPool2013 ac5pi

Figure 4-2: Microsoft Server Page from which the Firmware Version is Updated

4.9.1 Enabling Automatic Firmware Updates from the Server

The network administrator must locate the phone's firmware file on the Skype for Business server's embedded automatic upgrading facility, and configure the server to provision the phone. The facility allows for centralized automated phone upgrade to the latest firmware version. The firmware of any phone connected to the facility can be automatically upgraded from the facility. The phone then periodically - usually once a day - checks the Skype for Business server's automatic upgrading facility to determine if the firmware file on the phone is different to the firmware located on the Skype for Business server. The firmware file on the phone will be updated if it's different to the firmware located on the Skype for Business server.

4.9.2 Enabling Automatic Firmware Updates from the Server using Configuration File

You can use the Configuration File to enable automatic firmware updates from the Skype for Business Server.

To enable automatic firmware updates from the Skype for Business server:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Table 4-2: Automatic Firmware Update from Skype for Business Server - Configuration File

Parameter Name	Description
lync/SfBDeviceUpdate=0	Enables / disables automatic firmware update from the Skype for Business server.
	[0] Disable (default)[1] Enable

4.9.3 Manually Downloading Firmware to the Phone from the Server

When the 'SfB Update' provisioning method is used to provision the phone, you can *manually* check and download the firmware file on the Skype for Business server's automatic upgrading facility.

To manually check and download the firmware file located on the server to the phone:

 In the Web interface, open the Automatic Provisioning page (Management tab > Automatic Update menu > Automatic Provisioning).

Figure 4-3: Web Interface – Automatic Provisioning

Firmware Provisioning		
Firmware Provisioning		
Firmware Version :	UC_3.0.1.63.240	
Provisioning Method :	SfB Update 🗸	
SfB Update Server :	Enabled	Chec
SfB Update Server URL :	https://lyncweb2013.audiocodes.com:443/RequestHandlerExt/ucdevice.upx https://aclpool2013.corp.audiocodes.com:443/RequestHandler/ucdevice.upx	

2. Click the **Check Now** button; the firmware file on the Skype for Business server's automatic upgrading facility is checked and downloaded to the phone if different.

4.10 Enabling Phone Lock

The phone supports the capability to automatically lock after a preconfigured period of time. The feature secures the phone against unwanted (mis)use.



- The network administrator must enable *both* the Skype for Business server *and* the Web interface for the feature to function. If enabled in the server but disabled in the the Web interface, the feature will not function.
- The timeout is set in the Skype for Business server only.

When the phone is locked:

- Incoming calls are allowed
- Outgoing calls are not allowed except for calls to emergency numbers (police, ambulance service, firefighting service, etc.) which will be available via the **Emergency** softkey displayed after the phone locks.
- Voice Mail, Call Log, Calendar and Contacts cannot be accessed

To enable the feature:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Table 4-3: PIN Lock Parameter

Parameter Name	Description
system/pin_lock/enabled	Enables/disables automatic lock. If enabled, the user will be prompted for a PIN code when signing in for the first time. E.g.: 40004696 . The minimum length is configured on the server side.
	[0] Disable[1] Enable (default)

If a user's phone was automatically paired (see Section 4.12.7) and if the PC/laptop is active (not locked), the phone cannot be manually locked. The user can manually lock it only after locking the PC/laptop. If the user doesn't manually lock the phone, it will nevertheless automatically lock after the timeout preconfigured in the Skype for Business server lapses. The phone will unlock only after the user unlocks their PC/laptop or if the user manually unlocks the phone.

4.10.1 Allowing Users Other Capabilities besides Emergency Calls if Phones Lock

Network administrators can allow other capabilities besides dialing emergency numbers to users whose phones lock, in compliance with Microsoft Skype for Business.

Network administrators can configure parameters to:

- Allow users to make outgoing calls even though the phone is locked
- Allow users to receive incoming calls even though the phone is locked
- Allow users to answer Delegate calls even though the phone is locked
- Allow users to use the phone's handset even though the phone is locked

4.10.1.1 Allowing Users to use the Phone's Handset

Network administrators can configure the inband provisioning parameter 'DisableHandsetOnLockedMachine' on the server to allow users to use the phone's handset even if the phone is locked. Use the table below as reference.

Table 4-4: Inband Provisioning Paramete	er 'DisableHandsetOnLockedMachine'
---	------------------------------------

Parameter Name	Description
DisableHandsetOnLockedMachine	Determines handset functionality when the phone is locked. [0] Allows incoming and outgoing calls when the phone is locked [1] Allows only incoming calls when the phone is locked [2] Disallows incoming and outgoing calls when the phone is locked
	If the parameter is not provisioned, the phone functions as if the parameter is set to [1] - only incoming calls are allowed when the phone is locked.

4.10.1.2 Allowing Users to Make/Receive Incoming/Outgoing Calls

Network administrators can configure a local phone parameter 'AllowCallsInLockState' to determine if users can make/receive incoming/outgoing calls even if the phone is locked. Use the table below as reference.

Parameter Name	Description
AllowCallsInLockState	Determines if users can make/receive incoming/outgoing calls if the phone locks.
	[GET_FROM_INBAND] The phone's capabilities when locked are set by inband provisioning parameter (default)
	[ALLOW_BOTH] Allows users to make/receive incoming/outgoing calls when the phone is locked
	[ALLOW_INCOMING_ONLY] Allows users to make/receive incoming/outgoing calls when the phone is locked
	[DENY_BOTH] Disallows users from making/receiving incoming/outgoing calls when the phone is locked
	If set to ALLOW_BOTH or ALLOW_INCOMING_ONLY or DENY_BOTH, this parameter overrides the 'DisableHandsetOnLockedMachine' inband provisioning
	parameter.

Table 4-5: Local Phone Parameter 'AllowCallsInLockState'

4.10.1.3 Allowing Users to Answer Second-Hand (SLA | Delegation) Incoming Calls

Network administrators can configure a local parameter 'AnswerDelegateIncomingCalls' to determine if users can answer second-hand (Share Line Appearance and Delegation) incoming calls when the phone is locked.

The parameter is applicable only if parameter 'AllowCallsInLockState' is configured to allow the phone to answer incoming calls in lock state. See the previous section for details.

Use the table below as reference.

Parameter Name	Description
AnswerDelegateIncomingCalls	Determines if users can answer second-hand (Share Line Appearance and Delegation) incoming calls when the phone is locked.
	[0] Users cannot answer incoming Delegate calls when the phone is locked (default)
	[1] Users can answer incoming Delegate calls when the phone is locked.
	Note that the parameter is only applicable if parameter 'AllowCallsInLockState' is configured to allow the phone to answer incoming calls in lock state. See the previous section for details.

4.11 Exchange Server Features

Ĺ

Microsoft Exchange server features such as the Calendar feature are available on the phone.

To connect to Microsoft Exchange and receive these features, (online) sign-in *must be with username in UPN format*.

- Sign-in address
- Username in UPN (User Principal Name) format. UPN format is the way the user's name appears in their e-mail address listed in the Active Directory, i.e., username@domain.com
- User's network IT password

Signing in with a username that is a NetBIOS Domain Name, i.e., **domain\username**, as well as signing in with the phone Extension and PIN Code, are disallowed for Skype for Business *online sign-in*. They are only allowed for *on-premises* sign-in.

4.11.1 Configuring Calendar Displayed in the Phone's Screen

Microsoft Exchange Calendar is by default displayed in the phone's screen. To connect to Microsoft Exchange and receive the Calendar feature, sign-in *must be with username in UPN format* as described in the Note above.

To configure the feature with the Configuration File:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameters using the table below as reference.

Parameter Name	Description	
lync/calendar/enabled	 Enables or disables displaying Microsoft Exchange Calendar items in the phone's screen. [0] Disable [1] Enable (default) 	
lync/calendar/mode	 Determines which Microsoft Exchange Calendar meetings will be displayed in the phone's screen. [24H] (Default) Displays meetings scheduled to commence between now and 24 hours from now before now but scheduled to end after now before 24 hours from now but scheduled to end after 24 hours from now [TODAY] Displays meetings scheduled to commence between the midnight of the night before now and the midnight of the night ahead. 	
lync/calendar/sync_time/minutes	Determines how frequently the phone synchronizes with Microsoft Exchange Server. Default: Every 15 minutes.	

Table 4-7: Microsoft's Exchange Calendar

4.11.2 Configuring Meeting Reminders Popping up in the Phone's Screen

By default, reminders for *all* types of meetings; Skype for Business meetings as well as other types of meetings, will automatically pop up in the phone's screen. The feature can be modified using the Configuration File. The network administrator can configure for *which types of* meetings reminders will pop up.

To configure the feature:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Parameter Name	Description
lync/calendar/ReminderMode	Determines for which types of meetings reminders will automatically pop up in the phone's screen.
	 [ALL] (Default) Enables reminders for <i>all</i> types of meetings; Skype for Business meetings as well as other types of meetings will pop up in the phone's screen. [NONE] Disables reminders for <i>all</i> types of meetings; no meeting reminders will pop up in the phone's screen. [ONLINE] Enables reminders for online meetings, i.e., Skype for Business meetings.

Table 4-8: Calendar Meeting Reminders

4.11.3 Visual Voicemail

•	 For the feature to function: Your network administrator must enable your voicemail. You need to sign in to the phone with username and password. If you signed in with PIN code, the feature will not be available and your phone will display the following message: Your account is not configured for Exchange Unified Messaging.
	 Features activated from Microsoft's Exchange Server - such as this one - are only available after signing in to the phone with username in UPN format
	•

described in the Note above.

If voicemail is enabled and the phone was signed in by online sign-in, the user will be able to view a list of voicemail messages and select which message to listen to or to delete after pressing the voicemail hard key on the phone.

4.11.4 Skype for Business 'Favorites' Contacts & Outlook Contacts

Contact groups defined in Skype for Business and Outlook contacts are integrated with the phone. Pressing the CONTACTS hard key on the phone displays by default the 'Favorites' defined in the Skype for Business client. In the 'Favorites' screen, the **Groups** softkey provides the option to access 'Outlook contacts'. See the *User's Manual* for more information. The network administrator can limit the number of Outlook contacts to display in the phone's screen, to optimize phone resources.

To configure the maximum number of Outlook contacts to display in the phone's screen:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Parameter Name	Description
lync/ews/OutlookContactReply	Determines the maximum number of Outlook contacts to retrieve for display in the phone's screen. [50] (Default) = the phone will be able to retrieve for display up to 50 Outlook contacts in the screen.
	[0] = an unlimited number of Outlook contacts can be retrieved for display in the phone's screen, i.e., as many contacts as there are defined in Outlook can be retrieved for display.
	[500] = The maximum number of Outlook contacts that the phone can retrieved for display.

Table 4-9: Maximum Number of Outlook Contacts to Display in the Phone's Screen

4.12 Better Together over Ethernet

This section shows how to set up the Microsoft Skype for Business feature 'Better Together over Ethernet' on AudioCodes' 400HD Series of IP Phones.



BToE is not supported on the RX50 Conference Phone but the device by default includes a new **Pair** key that will appear after restoring to the phone's default settings. The key is for the future **Duo** feature.

BToE enables operations to be mirrored on both AudioCodes' IP phone and the Skype for Business client on the PC/laptop, so that these operations can be controlled from either the IP phone or the PC/laptop, whichever is convenient to the user at the time, for enhanced unified communications and optimized enterprise efficiency.

After your IP phone is paired with your Skype for Business client, you can control (from phone or PC/laptop) operations such as answering incoming calls, making outgoing calls (click-to-dial), putting calls on hold and resuming them, and making conference calls (see the *User's Manual*).

4.12.1 BToE Firewall Ports

Before installing the BToE, make sure the following firewall ports are configured:

- TCP port 9999 for communication between the BToE PC application and the phone.
- UDP port 9999 for the first steps of automatic pairing.
- UDP port 9998 for audio streaming.
 - Port 9999 can be configured with parameter *lync/BToE/TcpPortNumber*=9999
 - The audio streaming is equal to TcpPortNumber 1

4.12.2 Installing the BToE PC Application

This section shows how to install AudioCodes' BToE PC/laptop application.

To install the BToE PC/laptop application:

- 1. After obtaining the installation file whose name will be either *AudioCodes BToE.exe* or *AudioCodes BToE.msi*, save it to your PC and then double-click it.
 - If you install with the *exe*, then when upgrading you must use the *exe*. You cannot upgrade with the *msi* if you first installed with the *exe*, and vice versa.
 - See Section 4.12.3 for information on how to distribute the BToE PC application *msi* package.
 - Some PCs require the installation of .Net 4.0 prior to the installation of the BToE PC/laptop application. If you use the installation file *AudioCodes BToE.exe*, the Installation Wizard will detect that .Net 4.0 is missing and will prompt you to install it:

Status	Requirement

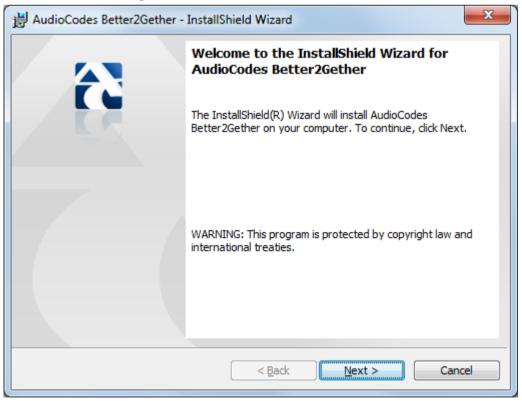
When installing the BToE PC/laptop application using the installation file *AudioCodes BToE.msi*, you won't be prompted to install .Net 4.0 and the network administrator should make the necessary preparations prior to installation of the BToE PC application.

The Prepare to Install screen opens showing preparation progress until the Welcome to the InstallShield Wizard screen opens as shown in Figure 4-7.

AudioCodes Better2Gether - InstallShield Wizard	
	Preparing to Install
	AudioCodes Better2Gether Setup is preparing the InstallShield Wizard, which will guide you through the program setup process. Please wait.
	Extracting: AudioCodes Better2Gether.msi
	Cancel

Figure 4-4: InstallShield Wizard – Preparing to Install

Figure 4-5: Welcome to the InstallShield Wizard



2. Click Next; the License Agreement dialog opens.

B AudioCodes Better2Gether - InstallShield Wizard
License Agreement Image: Comparison of C
END USER SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT
YOU SHOULD READ THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT CAREFULLY BEFORE CLICKING "I ACCEPT" CONVEYING YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF THE TERMS OF THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT FOR THE LICENSED SOFTWARE AND THE ACCOMPANYING USER DOCUMENTATION (THE "LICENSED SOFTWARE"). THE LICENSED SOFTWARE IS LICENSED (NOT SOLD). BY OPENING THE PACKAGE CONTAINING THE LICENSED SOFTWARE, AND/OR BY USING THE SOFTWARE YOU ARE ACCEPTING AND AGREEING TO THE TERMS OF THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT. IF YOU ARE NOT WILLING TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT, YOU SHOULD PROMPTLY RETURN THE LICENSED SOFTWARE TOGETHER WITH PROOF OF PURCHASE TO YOUR VENDOR FOR A
I accept the terms in the license agreement Print I do not accept the terms in the license agreement Print
InstallShield

3. Select the I accept... option and click Next.

Figure 4-7: License Agreement

HandioCodes Better2Gether - InstallShield Wizard
License Agreement
Please read the following license agreement carefully.
END USER SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT
YOU SHOULD READ THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT CAREFULLY BEFORE CLICKING "I ACCEPT" CONVEYING YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF THE TERMS OF THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT FOR THE LICENSED SOFTWARE AND THE ACCOMPANYING USER DOCUMENTATION (THE "LICENSED SOFTWARE"). THE LICENSED SOFTWARE IS LICENSED (NOT SOLD). BY OPENING THE PACKAGE CONTAINING THE LICENSED SOFTWARE, AND/OR BY USING THE SOFTWARE YOU ARE ACCEPTING AND AGREEING TO THE TERMS OF THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT. IF YOU ARE NOT WILLING TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT, YOU SHOULD PROMPTLY RETURN THE LICENSED SOFTWARE TOGETHER WITH PROOF OF PURCHASE TO YOUR VENDOR FOR A
I accept the terms in the license agreement
I do not accept the terms in the license agreement
InstallShield
< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext > Cancel

4. Click Next; the Destination Folder dialog opens.

Figure	4-8:	Destination	Folder
--------	------	-------------	--------

늻 AudioCo	odes Better2Gether - InstallShield Wizard
	ion Folder xt to install to this folder, or click Change to install to a different folder.
	Install AudioCodes Better 2Gether to: C:\Program Files (x86)\AudioCodes\Better 2Gether USB Over Ethernet\
InstallShield -	< <u>B</u> ack Cancel

To change the default Destination Folder, click Change and proceed to step 6.
 To leave the Destination Folder at its default, click Next and proceed to step 7.

HandioCodes Better2Gether - InstallShield Wizard
Change Current Destination Folder
Browse to the destination folder.
Look in:
Better 2Gether USB Over Ethernet
log
Eolder name:
C:\Program Files (x86)\AudioCodes\Better2Gether USB Over Ethernet\
InstallShield
OK Cancel

Figure 4-9: Change Current Destination Folder

- 6. Click **OK**; you're returned to the Destination Folder dialog.
- 7. Click **Next**; the Ready to Install dialog opens.

Figure 4-10: Ready to Install

HandioCodes Better2Gether - InstallShield Wizard	J
Ready to Install the Program	
The wizard is ready to begin installation.	
Click Install to begin the installation.	
If you want to review or change any of your installation settings, click Back. Click Cancel to exit the wizard.	
InstallShield	_

8. Click Install; the Installing AudioCodes Better2Gether dialog opens indicating installation

progress status.

Figure 4-11: Installing AudioCodes Better2Gether

😸 AudioCo	des Better2Gether - InstallShield Wizard	
	AudioCodes Better2Gether gram features you selected are being installed.	A
i 🖗	Please wait while the InstallShield Wizard installs AudioCodes Better2Gether. This may take several minutes.	
	Status:	
InstallShield -		
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

9. Wait until the following dialog is displayed:

Figure 4-12: InstallShield Wizard Completed

😸 AudioCodes Better2Gether -	InstallShield Wizard
	InstallShield Wizard Completed
	The InstallShield Wizard has successfully installed AudioCodes Better2Gether. Click Finish to exit the wizard.
	☑ Launch AudioCodes Better2Gether
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>Finish</u> Cancel

10. Click **Finish** and then check your Windows taskbar and locate the newly displayed AudioCodes icon (AC) as shown below:

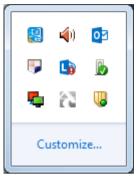


Figure 4-13: AudioCodes Icon in Taskbar

11. Wait until the "Installing device driver software" process completes:



12. Check your programs in the Control Panel > Programs. You should see:

Figure 4-14: Control Panel>Programs>AudioCodes Better2Gether

🕒 🔾 🗢 🔯 🕨 Control Panel	Programs Programs and Features					▼ 4 ₇	Search Programs and Features	
<u>File Edit View Tools Help</u>								
Control Panel Home View installed updates	Uninstall or change a program	list and then click Uninstall, Change, or Repair.						
Turn Windows features on or off	Organize 👻						8= -	0
Install a program from the network	Name	Publisher	Installed On	Size	Version			
	7-Zip 9.20 (x64 edition)	Igor Pavlov	3/25/2014	4.53 MB				
	ACVIToolbar 2.4 Adobe Flash Player 13 ActiveX	AudioCodes Adobe Systems Incorporated	11/17/2013 5/14/2014	6.00 MB	2.4 13.0.0.214			
			5/15/2014	163 MR	10.1.10			
	Adobe Reader X (10.1.10)	Adobe Systems Incorporated	11/13/2014	205 1110				
F		Adobe Systems Incorporated AudioCodes			0.00.0003	1		



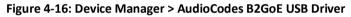
You can use this entry in the Control Panel > Programs to uninstall.

13. Access Computer Management > Services and Applications and locate BToE:

<u>File Action View H</u> elp						
Þ 🧼 🖄 📰 🖸 🗟 🛛 🖉 🤇						
Computer Management (Local	O. Services					
a 👔 System Tools		-				
D 🕑 Task Scheduler	Select an item to view its description.	Name	Description	Status	Startup Type	Log On As
Event Viewer		ActiveX Installer (Provides User Account Control validation for the installation of ActiveX control		Manual	Local System
Shared Folders		Adaptive Brightness	Monitors ambient light sensors to detect changes in ambient light and adjust t		Manual	Local Service
Eccal Users and Groups			Adobe Acrobat Updater keeps your Adobe software up to date.	Started	Automatic	Local System
Performance			This service keeps your Adobe Flash Player installation up to date with the late		Manual	Local System
🚔 Device Manager		AgentService	AgentService	Started	Automatic	Local System
Storage			Processes application compatibility cache requests for applications as they are	Started	Manual	Local System
Disk Management Services and Applications			Determines and verifies the identity of an application. Disabling this service wil		Manual	Local Service
Services and Applications			Facilitates the running of interactive applications with additional administrativ		Manual	Local System
WMI Control			Provides support for 3rd party protocol plug-ins for Internet Connection Sharing		Manual	Local Service
SQL Server Configuratic			Processes installation, removal, and enumeration requests for software deploy	Started	Manual	Local System
, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,			Provides support for out-of-process session states for ASP.NET. If this service i		Manual	Network Service
		Atria Location Bro		Started	Automatic	AUDIOCODES\clearcase_alb
		Background Intelli	Transfers files in the background using idle network bandwidth. If the service i	Started	Automatic (D	Local System
		Base Filtering Engi	The Base Filtering Engine (BFE) is a service that manages firewall and Internet P	Started	Automatic	Local Service
		BitLocker Drive En	BDESVC hosts the BitLocker Drive Encryption service. BitLocker Drive Encryptio		Manual	Local System
		Block Level Backu	The WBENGINE service is used by Windows Backup to perform backup and rec		Manual	Local System
		Bluetooth Support	The Bluetooth service supports discovery and association of remote Bluetooth		Manual	Local Service
		🔍 BranchCache	This service caches network content from peers on the local subnet.		Manual	Network Service
		🔍 BToE	Better2gether driver control service	Started	Automatic	Local System
	-	🤐 Certificate Propag	Copies user certificates and root certificates from smart cards into the current	Started	Manual	Local System
		🌼 Claims to Window	Service to convert claims based identities to windows identities		Manual	Local System
		🍓 CNG Key Isolation	The CNG key isolation service is hosted in the LSA process. The service provide	Started	Manual	Local System
		🌼 COM+ Event Syst	Supports System Event Notification Service (SENS), which provides automatic	Started	Automatic	Local Service
		🔍 COM+ System Ap	Manages the configuration and tracking of Component Object Model (COM)		Manual	Local System
			Maintains an updated list of computers on the network and supplies this list to	Started	Manual	Local System
		🌼 ConfigMgr Task S	ConfigMgr client agent for task sequence execution		Manual	Local System
		Configuration Ma	Provides the ability to remote control the system to authorized users		Disabled	Local System
		🔍 Credential Manager	Provides secure storage and retrieval of credentials to users, applications and s		Manual	Local System
	Extended / Standard /					

Figure 4-15: Computer Management > Services and Applications

14. Access the Device Manager and locate 'AudioCodes B2GoE USB driver'.



Ele Action View Help Action View Help Intel(R) Core(TM) i5-4570 CPU @ 3.20GHz PCI bus PCI	
Intel(R) Core(TM) i5-4570 CPU @ 3.20GHz PCI bus Intel(R) 4th Gen Core processor DRAM Controller - 0C00 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Chipset Family SATA AHCI Controller Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series PCI Express Root Port #1 - 8C10 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series PCI Express Root Port #3 - 8C14 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series PCI Express Root Port #3 - 8C14 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series SMBus Controller - 8C22 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #1 - 8C26 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #1 - 8C26 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #2 - 8C2D Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #2 - 8C2D Intel(R) BS LPC Controller - 8C50 Intel(R) HD Graphics 4600 Intel(R) HD Graphics 4600 Intel(R) USB 3.0 eXtensible Host Controller Intel(R) USB 3.0 eXtensible Host Controller Composite Bus Enumerator DameWare Virtual Keyboard Emulation for Standard Keyboard Microsoft System Management BIOS Driver	ew <u>H</u> elp
 High Definition Audio Controller High Definition Audio Controller Intel(R) 4th Gen Core processor DRAM Controller - 0C00 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Chipset Family SATA AHCI Controller Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series PCI Express Root Port #1 - 8C10 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series PCI Express Root Port #3 - 8C14 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series PCI Express Root Port #3 - 8C14 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series SMBus Controller - 8C22 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series SMBus Controller - 8C22 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #1 - 8C26 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #1 - 8C26 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #2 - 8C2D Intel(R) B85 LPC Controller - 8C50 Intel(R) HD Graphics 4600 Intel(R) HD Graphics 4600 Intel(R) HD Graphics 4600 Intel(R) Kuss 20 extensible Host Controller Intel(R) Wuss 2.0 extensible Host Controller Composite Bus Enumerator DameWare Virtual Keyboard Emulation for Standard Keyboard Microsoft System Management BIOS Driver 	
 High Definition Audio Controller High Definition Audio Controller - 0C00 Intel(R) & Series/C220 Chipset Family SATA AHCI Controller Intel(R) & Series/C220 Series PCI Express Root Port #1 - 8C10 Intel(R) & Series/C220 Series PCI Express Root Port #3 - 8C14 Intel(R) & Series/C220 Series SMBus Controller - 8C22 Intel(R) & Series/C220 Series Thermal - 8C24 Intel(R) & Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #1 - 8C26 Intel(R) & Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #1 - 8C26 Intel(R) & Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #2 - 8C2D Intel(R) BS LPC Controller - 8C50 Intel(R) HD Graphics 4600 Intel(R) HD Graphics 4600 Intel(R) HD Graphics Host Controller Intel(R) Waagement Engine Interface Intel(R) USB 3.0 eXtensible Host Controller DameWare Virtual Keyboard Emulation for Standard Keyboard Microsoft System Management BIOS Driver 	ntel(R) Core(TM) i5-4570 CPU @ 3.20GHz
 Intel(R) 4th Gen Core processor DRAM Controller - 0C00 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Chipset Family SATA AHCI Controller Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series PCI Express Root Port #1 - 8C10 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series PCI Express Root Port #3 - 8C14 Intel(R) 6 Gigabit CT Desktop Adapter Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series SMBus Controller - 8C22 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series Thermal - 8C24 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #1 - 8C26 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #2 - 8C2D Intel(R) 885 LPC Controller - 8C50 Intel(R) B85 LPC Controller - 8C50 Intel(R) HD Graphics 4600 Intel(R) HD Graphics 4600 Intel(R) USB 3.0 eXtensible Host Controller Composite Bus Enumerator DameWare Virtual Keyboard Emulation for Standard Keyboard Microsoft System Management BIOS Driver 	CI bus
 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Chipset Family SATA AHCI Controller Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series PCI Express Root Port #1 - 8C10 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series PCI Express Root Port #3 - 8C14 Intel(R) Gigabit CT Desktop Adapter Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series SMBus Controller - 8C22 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series Thermal - 8C24 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #1 - 8C26 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #2 - 8C2D Intel(R) 885 LPC Controller - 8C50 Intel(R) B85 LPC Controller - 8C50 Intel(R) HD Graphics 4600 Intel(R) HD Graphics 4600 Intel(R) USB 3.0 eXtensible Host Controller Composite Bus Enumerator DameWare Virtual Keyboard Emulation for Standard Keyboard Microsoft System Management BIOS Driver 	📮 High Definition Audio Controller
 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series PCI Express Root Port #1 - 8C10 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series PCI Express Root Port #3 - 8C14 Intel(R) Gigabit CT Desktop Adapter Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series SMBus Controller - 8C22 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series Thermal - 8C24 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #1 - 8C26 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #2 - 8C2D Intel(R) 885 LPC Controller - 8C50 Intel(R) Ethernet Connection 1217-V Intel(R) HD Graphics 4600 Intel(R) Management Engine Interface Intel(R) USB 3.0 eXtensible Host Controller Composite Bus Enumerator DameWare Virtual Keyboard Emulation for Standard Keyboard Microsoft System Management BIOS Driver 	💂 Intel(R) 4th Gen Core processor DRAM Controller - 0C00
 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series PCI Express Root Port #3 - 8C14 Intel(R) Gigabit CT Desktop Adapter Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series SMBus Controller - 8C22 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series Thermal - 8C24 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #1 - 8C26 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #2 - 8C2D Intel(R) 885 LPC Controller - 8C50 Intel(R) Ethernet Connection 1217-V Intel(R) HD Graphics 4600 Intel(R) Management Engine Interface Intel(R) USB 3.0 eXtensible Host Controller Composite Bus Enumerator DameWare Virtual Keyboard Emulation for Standard Keyboard Microsoft System Management BIOS Driver 	a Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Chipset Family SATA AHCI Controller
 Intel(R) Gigabit CT Desktop Adapter Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series SMBus Controller - 8C22 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series Thermal - 8C24 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #1 - 8C26 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #2 - 8C2D Intel(R) 885 LPC Controller - 8C50 Intel(R) Ethernet Connection 1217-V Intel(R) HD Graphics 4600 Intel(R) Management Engine Interface Intel(R) USB 3.0 eXtensible Host Controller Composite Bus Enumerator DameWare Virtual Keyboard Emulation for Standard Keyboard Microsoft System Management BIOS Driver 	💂 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series PCI Express Root Port #1 - 8C10
Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series SMBus Controller - 8C22 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series Thermal - 8C24 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #1 - 8C26 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #2 - 8C2D Intel(R) 885 LPC Controller - 8C50 Intel(R) HD Graphics 4600 Intel(R) Management Engine Interface Intel(R) USB 3.0 eXtensible Host Controller Composite Bus Enumerator DameWare Virtual Keyboard Emulation for Standard Keyboard Microsoft System Management BIOS Driver	Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series PCI Express Root Port #3 - 8C14
 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series Thermal - 8C24 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #1 - 8C26 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #2 - 8C2D Intel(R) 885 LPC Controller - 8C50 Intel(R) Ethernet Connection 1217-V Intel(R) HD Graphics 4600 Intel(R) Management Engine Interface Intel(R) USB 3.0 eXtensible Host Controller Composite Bus Enumerator DameWare Virtual Keyboard Emulation for Standard Keyboard Microsoft System Management BIOS Driver 	📲 Intel(R) Gigabit CT Desktop Adapter
 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #1 - 8C26 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #2 - 8C2D Intel(R) 85 LPC Controller - 8C50 Intel(R) Ethernet Connection 1217-V Intel(R) HD Graphics 4600 Intel(R) Management Engine Interface Intel(R) USB 3.0 eXtensible Host Controller Composite Bus Enumerator DameWare Virtual Keyboard Emulation for Standard Keyboard Microsoft System Management BIOS Driver 	Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series SMBus Controller - 8C22
 Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #2 - 8C2D Intel(R) B85 LPC Controller - 8C50 Intel(R) Ethernet Connection 1217-V Intel(R) HD Graphics 4600 Intel(R) Management Engine Interface Intel(R) USB 3.0 eXtensible Host Controller AudioCodes B2GoE USB driver Composite Bus Enumerator DameWare Virtual Keyboard Emulation for Standard Keyboard Microsoft System Management BIOS Driver 	Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series Thermal - 8C24
 Intel(R) B85 LPC Controller - 8C50 Intel(R) Ethernet Connection I217-V Intel(R) HD Graphics 4600 Intel(R) Management Engine Interface Intel(R) USB 3.0 eXtensible Host Controller Lomposite Bus Enumerator Composite Bus Enumerator DameWare Virtual Keyboard Emulation for Standard Keyboard Microsoft System Management BIOS Driver 	Intel(R) 8 Series/C220 Series USB EHCI #1 - 8C26
Intel(R) Ethernet Connection 1217-V Intel(R) HD Graphics 4600 Image Intel(R) Management Engine Interface Intel(R) USB 3.0 eXtensible Host Controller Image AudioCodes B2GoE USB driver Composite Bus Enumerator DameWare Virtual Keyboard Emulation for Standard Keyboard Microsoft System Management BIOS Driver	
Intel(R) HD Graphics 4600 Intel(R) Management Engine Interface Intel(R) USB 3.0 eXtensible Host Controller AudioCodes B2GoE USB driver Composite Bus Enumerator DameWare Virtual Keyboard Emulation for Standard Keyboard Microsoft System Management BIOS Driver	
Intel(R) Management Engine Interface Intel(R) USB 3.0 eXtensible Host Controller Me AudioCodes B2GoE USB driver Composite Bus Enumerator DameWare Virtual Keyboard Emulation for Standard Keyboard Microsoft System Management BIOS Driver	
Intel(R) USB 3.0 eXtensible Host Controller AudioCodes B2GoE USB driver Composite Bus Enumerator DameWare Virtual Keyboard Emulation for Standard Keyboard Microsoft System Management BIOS Driver	
AudioCodes B2GoE USB driver Composite Bus Enumerator DameWare Virtual Keyboard Emulation for Standard Keyboard Microsoft System Management BIOS Driver	
Composite Bus Enumerator Composite Bus Enumerator DameWare Virtual Keyboard Emulation for Standard Keyboard Microsoft System Management BIOS Driver	
DameWare Virtual Keyboard Emulation for Standard Keyboard 	ite Bus Enumerator
🛶 💵 Plug and Play Software Device Enumerator	I Play Software Device Enumerator
	n BToE Enumerator
📲 Remote Desktop Device Redirector Bus	Desktop Device Redirector Bus
Main Market Ma	Root Rus Enumerator

You've successfully installed the program.

4.12.3 Distributing the BToE PC Application msi Package

This section shows how to distribute the BToE PC application *msi* package. The name of the BToE PC application *msi* package is *AudioCodes BToE.msi*.



Do not change the file name. Changing it is disallowed.

To distribute the BToE PC application *msi* package:

15. Use the following command to install the *msi* package:

msiexec /I "AudioCodes BToE.msi" /qn

16. Use the following command to reinstall/upgrade the BToE PC application:

msiexec.exe /i "AudioCodes BToE.msi" REINSTALLMODE=voums
REINSTALL=ALL /qn

If the *msi* filename was modified before installation, you may encounter issues with the reinstall/upgrade.

To troubleshoot:

17. Uninstall the previous BToE PC application installation: Use the following command to uninstall the full BToE PC application:

msiexec /X {1ED60F87-9DD1-4A3A-9A7F-BAA708F6FFA5} /L*v
"c:\windows\temp\btoe.log" /qn /norestart

18. Refer to the instructions above. Reinstall without renaming the *msi* file.

4.12.4 Making Sure BToE is Correctly Installed

This section shows how to make sure Better Together over Ethernet is correctly installed.

To make sure BToE is correctly installed:

1. Click the **AC** (AudioCodes) taskbar icon; the following menu pops up:

 Bare : =::: shahe.a
About
Disconnect
Phone Pairing
How To Pair
Configuration
Phone Web
Exit

Figure 4-17: Popup Menu

2. Select the About... menu option to verify the DLL and BToE version:

Figure 4-18: About AC BTOE About AudioCodes BToE Build Version : 20.3 DLL Version : 2.0.0 Application Version : 2.0.2.1

4.12.5 Enabling BToE for Online Users in the Skype for Business Server

To enable BToE for an online user, the Skype for Business server must be configured to enable BToE.

To enable BToE for online users in the Skype for Business server:

3. Copy the file *LyncOnlineConnector.psd1* to the following path:

PS C:\Users\Administrator> Import-Module 'C:\Program Files\Common Files\Skype for Business Online\Modules\LyncOnlineConnector

- 4. Configure the following parameters in the Skype for Business server:
 - \$credential = Get-Credential
 - \$credential
 - \$session = New-CsOnlineSession -Credential \$credential
 - Import-PSSession \$session
 - Get-CsTenant
 - Get-CsIPPhonePolicy

4.12.6 Configuring the BToE TCP Port

You can opt to configure a different BToE TCP port to the default 9999, depending on the requirements of your enterprise. For example, you may decide to change the BToE TCP port to 5000 because your enterprise is using the default port of 9999, and 5000 is available. This feature therefore provides enterprise administrators with more freedom in network administration.



If you decide to change the default BToE TCP port, you must update *both* the PC/laptop *and* the IP phone with the new BToE TCP port number.

To change the BToE TCP port on the PC/laptop side:

- 5. Click the AC (AudioCodes) taskbar icon; the menu shown in Figure 4-20 pops up.
- 6. Select **Disconnect** in the popup menu and then select **Configuration** > **TCP Port**.

About		
Connect		
Phone Pairing		
How To Pair		
Configuration	\checkmark	Connect on Startup
Phone Web		TCP Port
Exit		

Figure 4-19: TCP Port

7. From the AC BTOE TCP Port dialog that opens, configure the TCP Port:

Figure 4-20: AC BToE TCP Port

C BTOE TCP Por	
Type the	TCP Port
ОК	Cancel

The valid range is 1 to 65535.

To change the BToE TCP port on the IP phone side:

In the Configuration File, change the 'lync/BToE/TcpPortNumber' parameter. For example, lync/BToE/TcpPortNumber=5000.

4.12.7 Automatically Pairing the BToE PC/Laptop Application with the IP Phone

Pairing is *by default automatically* performed when the phone's PC port is connected to the PC/laptop 'behind' the phone, using a standard straight-through RJ-45 cable.

Manual pairing is by default disabled.

To enable manual pairing, see the next section.



Automatic pairing requires BToE PC/laptop application Version 2.x.

If the laptop after automatic pairing is disconnected and moved to another location, its speaker/headset becomes the audio device associated with the Skype for Business client.

If the laptop is *manually* paired and then relocated, Skype for Business audio will remain through the phone. It's therefore advisable to pair *automatically*.

4.12.8 Manually Pairing the BToE PC/Laptop Application with the Phone

This section shows how to manually pair the phone with the BToE PC/laptop application, using a pair code.

Before manually pairing, *enable* the manual pairing functionality by configuring the Configuration File parameter 'lync/BToE/pairing_mode' to **BOTH**.

Then follow this procedure:

- 1. Generate a pair code (see Section 4.12.8.1)
- 2. Connect the phone and BToE PC/laptop application using the pair code (see Section 4.12.8.3)



- If the IP address changes, you'll need to generate a pair code again.
- If you know the last pair code, you don't need to generate a new one. If you don't know it, see the next section.

4.12.8.1 Support for Citrix XenDesktop VDI

BToE supports Citrix XenDesktop virtual desktop infrastructure (VDI); BToE can connect a phone in a XenDesktop environment. To connect the phone to XenDesktop, set the configuration file parameter '/lync/BToE/pairing_mode' to **VDI**. BToE version 2.1.8 must be installed. BToE runs in the following XenDesktop modes:

- Persistent Sessions. In this mode, a dedicated VM is used per user; it's always active.
- Non-Persistent Session. In this mode, the user is connected to an available VM in the pool. After the user logs off, the machine can be used by another user. When the user is connected, their settings and data are restored.

After the user is connected to the XenDesktop environment and signs-in to Skype for Business, all BToE functions are available. BToE runs on Xen Desktop, paired manually to the phone. The user's pc running the XenDesktop client can be connected directly to the phone. The BToE application runs on XenDesktop and is paired via manual IP pairing. During a video call, audio is routed from the XenDesktop client to the phone.



- HDI optimization must be is disabled for BToE to function correctly with Citrix XenDesktop.
- XenDesktop (for remote users) runs on Windows 10.
- Thin client is not supported.

4.12.8.2 Manually Generating a Pair Code

This section shows how to manually generate a pair code.

To manually generate a pair code:

On the phone, press the MENU hard key and in the Menu screen that is displayed, choose BToE; the BToE pair code is displayed:



- This is the pair code that will be used by the BToE PC/laptop application to pair the PC/laptop with the phone for unified communications.
- Make a note of this pair code for reference when connecting the phone with the BToE PC/laptop application.

4.12.8.3 Connecting the IP Phone with the BToE PC/Laptop Application

This section shows how to connect the IP phone with the BToE PC/laptop application.

To connect the two:

1. Open the AudioCodes BToE Connect dialog: Click the BToE client icon placed on your taskbar after installation; the following popup menu opens.

9.	
	About
	Connect
	Phone Pairing
	How To Pair
	Configuration
	Phone Web
	Exit

Figure 4-21: Popup Menu

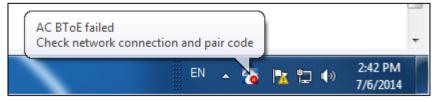
2. Select the Phone Pairing option

Figure 4-22: Phone Pairing

AudioCodes BToE	Connect	X
Enter your pl	hone pairing code	
Pair code:	+jfAn4@E	
	Help OK Can	cel

- **3.** In the 'Enter your phone pairing code' dialog, enter the pair code that you generated as shown in Section 4.12.8.1; the **OK** button is activated after 8 characters are entered.
- 4. Click **OK**; BToE is activated. If a communication error occurs or the wrong pair code was entered, the following icon indication appears:

Figure 4-23: AC BToE Failed Indication



5. When BToE is successfully connected, view the following icon indication:

Figure 4-24: AC BToE is Connected Indication

	Ŧ
AC BToE is connected to: 10.37.2.66:9999 2 Cols VT10	00 NU
EN 🔺 😿 📴 🐠) 2:41 PM 7/6/2014

6. When BToE is in 'Connected' state, the popup menu shows the **Disconnect** m and the **Phone Pairing** menu item is deactivated:

menu item

Figure 4-25: Popup Menu: 'Disconnect' Enabled, 'Phone Pairing' Disabled



7. After selecting the **Disconnect** menu option, the 'AC BToE Disconnected' indication is displayed:

Figure 4-26: BToE Disconnected



8. From the popup menu as well you can see if BToE is disconnected:

Figure 4-27: Popup Menu: BToE Disconnected

About
Connect
Phone Pairing
How To Pair
Configuration
Phone Web
Exit

When BToE is connected, you can select the **Phone Web** menu option to open the phone's Web interface.

9. Use the table below as reference when determining BToE's connection state from the taskbar icon.

Taskbar Icon	BToE's connection state
2	BToE is connected
	BToE is disconnected
2	BToE is connected but a failure is preventing a correct connection. The failure can be a network problem or the wrong pair code was defined.

10. From the click popup menu, you can select the **Exit** option; the BToE PC application stops. You can activate the application again from the Start menu as shown in Figure 4-31.

📕 Adobe Reader X ۸ 🚇 Audacity 👩 Default Programs Shabi Levi 📑 Desktop Gadget Gallery GIMP 2 Documents Internet Explorer E Pictures SecureCRT 5.0 🔁 TeamViewer 9 Music 💓 Windows DVD Maker 🙀 Windows Fax and Scan Computer 😨 Windows Media Center 🜔 Windows Media Player Control Panel 🚰 Windows Update 🛄 WinZip **Devices and Printers** 🗖 Wireshark < XPS Viewer Default Programs 7-Zip Accessories Help and Support AudioCodes 📗 AcViToolBar Better2Gether C BToE Controller l Autonomy **Beyond Compare 2** Cppcheck 1.63 1 Dropbox 4 Back Search programs and files Q Shut down 👂

Figure 4-28: Start > Programs > AudioCodes > BToE Controller

4.12.9 Connecting the Skype for Business Client with the IP Phone

This section shows how to connect the Microsoft Skype for Business client with the IP phone using the Skype for Business login screen.

To connect the two:

Enter your credentials in the Sign-in request prompt, and click **OK**.

i igui e a	25. Sign in Request	Tiompe
Logon info	rmation neede	×
	een detected between yo To complete the connect sword.	
Sign-in address:	alan.roberts@audiocode	s.com
User name:	AUDIOCODES\alanr	
Password:		
	ОК	Cancel

Figure 4-29: Sign-in Request Prompt

- Signing in via the Skype for Business client is flexible with respect to user name format: It can be entered in NetBIOS format (domain\user, for example, companyname\johnb) as well as User Principal Name (UPN) format (user@domain, for example, johnb@companyname.com).
 - BToE version 2.1.8 must be installed.
 - The configuration file parameter 'lync/BToE/use_UPN_str' must be configured to 1 (Default: 0).
 - Primary Device cannot be changed in the Skype for Business PC client during a call. When the phone is in idle mode (not in a call), the PC application must be disconnected in order to change Primary Device.

4.12.10 Making Sure IP Phone/ Skype for Business Client are Paired

This section shows how to make sure you successfully paired your IP phone with the Skype for Business client.

4.12.10.1 Making Sure the Skype for Business Client is Paired

You can make sure the Skype for Business client is paired with the IP phone.

To make sure the Skype for Business client is paired with the IP phone:

 In the Skype for Business application, in the lowermost left corner of the screen, click the Select Primary Device icon 2 -; the following popup menu opens:

Sel	Select Your Primary Device		
8	Handset		
	3- AudioCodes 400HD Phone		
F	Other Device		
	USB Ear-Microphone		
	Audio Device Settings		
	Check Call Quality		

- 2. Make sure Handset AudioCodes 400HD Phone is selected.
 - When answering an incoming *video* call with a paired phone, the call is established. The default device is the PC speaker/microphone rather than the phone. Subsequent audio calls will be unaffected; the paired phone will still be the default device.
 - In pairing mode, the user (Skype for Business PC client /phone) can perform up to two concurrent calls (incoming/outgoing). See the *Release Notes*.

4.12.10.2 Making Sure the Phone is Paired with the PC/Laptop

You can determine from the phone's idle screen if the phone is paired with the Skype for Business client.

After connecting the phone's PC port to the PC/laptop 'behind' the phone using a standard straight-through RJ-45 cable, the notification Better Together Activated pops up and then disappears. Two interlocked rings displayed in the idle screen indicates that the phone is paired.



The icon shown above is that displayed in the 450HD and C450HD phone's idle screen. The concept is identical for all phones, though size and color differ from one to another.

If the idle screen does not display two interlocked rings, this indicates that the phone is not paired with the PC/laptop.



4.12.11 Configuring Mode of Operation for Phone-PC Pairing

A Configuration File parameter 'pairing_mode' can be used to configure the mode of operation for pairing the phone with the PC.

To configure the pairing mode:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Parameter Name	Description
lync/BToE/pairing_mode	 AUTOMATIC mode When the PC port of the phone is connected directly to the PC, the phone is <i>automatically</i> paired with the PC -OR- BOTH mode When the user manually enters the pairing code into the PC application and the PC is connected to the network or directly connected to the phone's PC port, the phone is <i>manually</i> paired -or- When the PC port of the phone is connected directly to the PC, the phone is <i>automatically</i> paired with the PC

Table 4-10: Pairing Mode Parameter

The PC application does not have a Configuration File parameter, so if the user manually enters a pairing code into the PC:

- the PC application toggles every second between MANUAL and AUTOMATIC mode
- the PC waits for automatic pairing (listens to UDP port 9999 to determine if a phone is connected directly to the PC).



If a phone is detected and automatic pairing is established, the old pairing code is removed from the Windows registry.

4.12.12 Pairing Across Different Subnets

Pairing across different subnets is enabled by default. The 'lync/BToE/CheckNetwork=0' field in the configuration file enables it.

To make sure pairing across different subnets is enabled:

 In the Web interface, access the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File).

Configuration File
 Configuration File
<pre>;UC_2.0.3.22mon_r0 lync/BToX/CheckNetwork=1 lync/BToX/gruenipabler.levi@audiocodes.com;opaque=user:epid:Ytk4xav lync/BToZ/pair_code=BMcbnNtk lync/BToZ/pid=6410 lync/BToZ/vid=1105 lync/autodiscovery/enabled=1 lync/conference/anble_ssrtp=0 lync/contact_search/trace/enabled=0 lync/contact_search/trace/enabled=0 lync/contact_search/trace/enabled=0 lync/contact_search/trace/enabled=0 lync/credentials/duration=480 lync/credentials/duration=480 lync/credentials/username=AgAAJGJfHYBzoIgpElIfIx4J3A2PbaEHdbeiU8z8KLM_ lync/location_profile_description/name=apc-site-sip-trunk</pre>

Figure 4-30: Web Interface - Configuration File

- 2. Locate the 'CheckNetwork' field. Make sure it is set to its default of **0**.
 - **0** = pairing across different subnets enabled
 - 1 = pairing across different subnets disabled

4.12.13 Troubleshooting

If a BToE issue occurs such as a pairing issue, or if a BToE error notification is received, access the logged issue on the pc on which BToE is installed, in the location equivalent to the following location:

C:\Program Files (x86)\AudioCodes\Better2Gether USB Over Ethernet\log

Use the details of the logged issue to inform you how to troubleshoot.

Also refer to AudioCodes' video tutorial about BToE, at <u>http://youtu.be/fZZ0nPWJ7uM</u>.

4.13 Device Duo

The Device Duo mode feature enables AudioCodes' IP phones to be configured as *a paired audio device*. The feature allows users to use their phone not only as a desk phone but also as a loudspeaker over a network that supports telephony operations such as accept / end calls, in addition to supporting basic audio operations.

- The Device Duo feature is currently supported for pairing AudioCodes' IP phone with Microsoft's Teams application.
 - The Device Duo feature is currently also supported for pairing AudioCodes' phones with Zoom client application for basic functionalities.
 - The feature is currently supported for Windows 10.
 - The screens shown in these RNs are of the C450HD. The screens of the RX50, 450HD and 445HD are similar with insignificant differences. They're not shown here unless differences are significant.
 - The screen of the C450HD is a touch screen, so 'touch' in this document is interchangeable with 'press'.

4.13.1 Benefits

The Device Duo allows users to use their IP phone not only as a phone but rather as a 'smart' audio device that *combines handset with loud speaker*.

The 'smart' audio device allows telephony controls such as call start and call end in addition to audio device controls such as volume up and down and mute but it is *not limited to these controls*.

The feature is based by standard implementation on the generalized portion of BToE capabilities to allow other third party desktop applications to use the device as a loud speaker.

4.13.2 Installing the Device Duo on the PC

AudioCodes' Device Duo Wizard facilitates installation of the controller on your PC. Before installing the Device Duo, uninstall BToE if it's installed.

To install the Device Duo:

1. Run the executable file *AudioCodes Device Duo.exe* locally (from the user's PC).



2. In the wizard that opens, click **Next**.

🕷 AudioCodes Device Duo - Wizard			×
License Agreement Please read the following license agreen	nent carefully.		QC audiocodes
END USER SOFTWAI	RE LICENSI	AGREEMEN	<u>• T</u>
YOU SHOULD READ THE TERMS AND CAREFULLY BEFORE CLICKING "I AG THE TERMS OF THIS END USER SOFTWARE AND THE ACCOMPANYI SOFTWARE"). THE LICENSED SOFTW THE PACKAGE CONTAINING THE LIC SOFTWARE YOU ARE ACCEPTING LICENSE AGREEMENT. IF YOU ARE NO THIS LICENSE AGREEMENT, YOU SI SOFTWARE TOGETHER WITH PROOF	CCEPT" CONVE LICENSE AGRE NG USER DOCU ARE IS LICENSI CENSED SOFTW AND AGREEIN DT WILLING TO HOULD PROMI	YING YOUR ACCI EMENT FOR THI MENTATION (THE ED (NOT SOLD). E TARE, AND/OR BY G TO THE TERM BE BOUND BY TH PTLY RETURN TH	EPTANCE OF E LICENSED WICENSED WOPENING USING THE IS OF THIS E TERMS OF E LICENSED
 ○ I <u>a</u>ccept the terms in the license agreem I <u>do</u> not accept the terms in the license a 			Print
InstallShield			
	< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >	Cancel

3. Accept the terms and click Next.

4. Configuring Microsoft Skype for Business Features

AudioCodes Dev	vice Duo - Wizard			×
Destination Fold Click Next to insta	e r all to this folder, or click	Change to install	to a different folder	audiocodes
	AudioCodes Device Duo gram Files (x86)\AudioC		l	<u>C</u> hange
InstallShield		< <u>B</u> ack	Next >	Cancel

4. Note the installation path and click **Next**.

🛃 AudioCodes Device Duo - Wizard		×
Ready to Install the Program The wizard is ready to begin installation.		QC audiocodes
Click Install to begin the installation.		
If you want to review or change any of you exit the wizard.	r installation settings, click Back. (Click Cancel to
InstallShield	< Back Install	Cancel

5. Click Install or click Back to review or change settings – or Cancel to exist the wizard..

🖟 AudioCo	des Device Duo - Wizard			_		×
	AudioCodes Device Duo ram features you selected are	being installed.			Q	odes
1	Please wait while the Wizard several minutes.	installs AudioCodes	s Device Duo	. This ma	ay take	
	Status:					
InstallShield –						
		< <u>B</u> ack	<u>N</u> ext >		Cano	el

6. Wait for the installation process to complete.

🛃 AudioCodes Device Duo - Wi	zard X
QC audiocodes	Wizard Completed
audiocodes	The Wizard has successfully installed AudioCodes Device Duo. Click Finish to exit the wizard.
	☑ Launch AudioCodes Device Duo
	Show the Windows Installer log
	< <u>B</u> ack <u>Fi</u> nish Cancel

7. Click **Finish**; the installation is complete.

4.13.3 Making Sure Device Duo is Correctly Installed

This section shows how to make sure Device Duo is correctly installed.

To make sure Device Duo is correctly installed:

1. After running the application, click the **AC** Device Duo taskbar icon.



2. View the following menu that pops up:

Figure 4-31: Popup Menu	
About	
Disconnect	
Manual Pairing Code	
How To Pair	
Configuration	>
Phone Web	
Print Status	
Paired Applications	
Exit	

Select the About... menu option to verify the DLL and Device Duo version: 3.

About AudioCodes Device De	X ot
Build Version : 2.32 DLL Version : 2.0.13.0 Application Version :) 2.3.1.0

Figure 4-32: About AudioCodes Device Duo

Pairing the Device Duo Application with the IP Phone 4.13.4

This section shows how to pair the Device Duo application with the IP phone.

Pairing can be done by:

- **Pairing code**
 - Set configuration file parameter 'lync/BToE/pairing_mode' to BOTH By default, it's configured to AUTOMATIC for all devices except RX50; for RX50, it's by default configured to BOTH.
- Automatic pairing mode
 - (RX50 and RXV100Hub) Set configuration file parameter 'lync/BToE/pairing_mode' by • default configured to BOTH and set 'system/duo/advertise_over_network' to 1 (see Section 4.13.4.2 for more information)

• By connecting the phones by cable to PC port. (see Section 4.13.4.3 for more information)

4.13.4.1 Pairing Code

This section shows how to pair the Device Duo app with the phone using a pairing code generated by the phone as a unique ID of the device.

To pair:

1. Press the MENU key on the phone:

≔ Menu				Q) 18 Nov 13:58
	CALL LOG	CONTACTS	KEYS	දිවූ SETTINGS	
		DEVICE STATUS	PAIRING	CALENDAR	
					K Back

2. In the Menu screen, touch Pairing.

≔ Menu				Ø	18 Nov 1	4:03
	C.	Pairi k4a	odes device ng Code: 1*2WKU	9		
	ADMINISTRATION	DEVICE STATUS	PAIRING	CALENDAR		
Cano						

- 3. Make a note of the pairing code, in this example, k4a*2WKU
- 4. On the PC, open the Device Duo:



5. In the systray, click the **AC Device Duo** icon.

About		1						
Connect								
Manual Pairing Co	ode							
How To Pair			0	<u>.</u>	01			
Configuration	>			~	÷.	~		
Phone Web			<u>a</u> (1	Ļ	8 2		
Print Status								
Paired Application	ns >		3 (6	16			
Exit			_					
		2	2				+	1009
		ş	e ^R	へ 覧	⊐ ⊲ »)	ENG	2:07 PM 11/18/2020	Į,

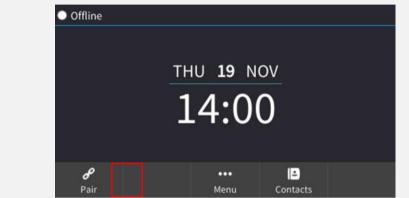
6. Select Manual Pairing Code...

AudioCodes Device D	AudioCodes Device Duo Connect						
Enter your phone pairing code							
Pair code:							
Н	elp	ОК	Cancel				

7. In the 'Pair code' field, enter the pairing code k4a*2WKU you noted earlier and click OK; view on the phone the briefly displayed message Pairing activated; the AC Device Duo icon is now highlighted and indicates AC Device Duo is now connected to <Phone IP Address>.



If the RX50 is signed in with a Skype for Business user, the **Menu** softkey will be displayed and pairing will be available as explained above. If the RX50 Skype for Business user is signed out and 'voip/account/primary_type' OR 'voip/account/secondary_type' is **TEAMS_DESKTOP**, then a **Pair** softkey will be displayed for pairing. Since the RX50 default value is **TEAMS_DESKTOP**, the **Pair** softkey is displayed when signed out.



4.13.4.2 Automatically Pairing the RXV100Hub with the RX50

This section shows how to automatically pair the Device Duo app on the RXV100Hub with the RX50 conference phone.

RXV100Hub must already be set up in the same subnet (see the *RXV100Hub Installation & Getting Started Guide* for more information).

Make sure configuration file parameters

- 'lync/BToE/pairing_mode' is set to BOTH (default)
- 'system/duo/advertise_over_network' is configured to 1 (default)

• Before pairing your RX50, upgrade it with firmware version 3.4.6.231 (see Section 5.1 for detailed information).

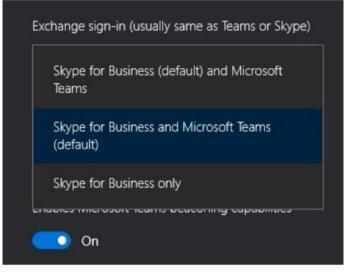
After the upgrade, restore the RX50 to defaults (MENU>ADMIN>Restore Defaults).
 [Applies only to customers who want to connect to the RX50 after purchasing the RX50 not as part of the MTR].

4.13.4.2.1 Providing MTR Credentials

When the RXV100Hub is switched on for the first time, Microsoft Teams Rooms (MTR) credentials must be provided to sign in.

To provide MTR credentials:

- 1. In the RXV100Hub Setup Wizard, select Keyboard (English US) and Region.
- 2. Accept the license agreement and select Next.
- 3. Under 'Supported meeting mode', select Skype for Business and Microsoft Teams (default).



4. Enter the Teams Rooms credentials and select Next > Next > Next > Finish.

4.13.4.2.2 Pairing the RXV100Hub with the RX50

After completing the previous steps, RXV100Hub and the RX50 are *automatically paired*.



On the RX50 screen, view **Pairing activated**. View also the pairing icon **(1)** in the top right corner and **MTR Audio** (instead of **Offline**) in the top left corner. After they're paired, log in to the RXV100Hub as Administrator and set RX50 to be its default audio device.

To log in to the RXV100Hub as Administrator

- 1. From the Main Menu, touch More, and then touch Settings.
- 2. Enter the Administrator password, and then touch Yes.
- 3. Select **Windows Settings**, and then select the Administrator account displayed in the lower left corner; a prompt appears requesting Administrator credentials.
- 4. Enter the credentials; after successful validation, you're logged in as Administrator to manage the RXV100Hub. Note that the default Administrator password is **sfb**.

If prompted to change the Administrator password, enter **12345678**, confirm and then execute the *change_admin_password.exe* script from the **<admin>Windows** account; the password is re-set to **sfb**.

To set the RX50 as the default audio device:

- After logging in to the RXV100Hub as Administrator (see next section for details), select More and then select Settings; enter the Administrator password (default is sfb) and press Yes.
- 6. Under **Peripherals**, select **AudioCodes RX50** as 'Microphone for Conferencing', **Speaker** for 'Conferencing' and 'Default Speaker', and then press **Save** and **Exit**.

4.13.4.3 Automatic Pairing using PC Port



This section is not relevant to RX50 as there is no PC port on the device.

Before performing pairing:

- Make sure configuration file parameter 'lync/BToE/pairing_mode' is configured to AUTOMATIC (default).
- Make sure the phone's PC port is connected to the PC as follows:



4.13.5 Configuring Mode of Operation for Phone-PC Pairing

The configuration file parameter 'pairing_mode' can be used to configure the mode of operation for pairing the phone with the PC with Device Duo.

To configure the pairing mode:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Table 4-11: Pairing Mode Parameter

Parameter Name	Description
lync/BToE/pairing_mode	 AUTOMATIC mode When the PC port of the phone is connected directly to the PC, the phone is <i>automatically</i> paired with the PC Device Duo application -OR- BOTH mode When the user manually enters the pairing code into the Device Duo application on the PC, and the PC is connected to the network or directly connected to the phone's PC port, the phone is manually paired -Or- When the PC port of the phone is connected directly to the PC, the
	phone is <i>automatically</i> paired with the PC application.

- The PC application does not have a Configuration File parameter, so if the user manually enters a pairing code into the PC:
 - the PC application toggles every second between MANUAL and AUTOMATIC mode
 - the PC waits for automatic pairing (listens to UDP port 9999 to determine if a phone is connected directly to the PC).

4.13.6 Pairing Across Different Subnets

Pairing across different subnets is enabled by default. The 'lync/BToE/CheckNetwork=0' field in the configuration file enables it.

To make sure pairing across different subnets is enabled:

 In the Web interface, access the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File).

Configuration File
<pre>;UC_2.0.3.2_DOD_20 lync/BTof/CheckNetWork=1 lync/BTof/pine=Audiocodes BToE lync/BTof/pine=Audiocodes BToE lync/BTof/pine=Audiocodes BToE lync/BTof/pid=6410 lync/BTof/pid=6410 lync/BTof/vid=1105 lync/conference/app_invite_enabled=0 lync/conference/enable_ssttp=0 lync/contact_search/trace/enabled=0 lync/contact_search/trace/enabled=0 lync/contact_search/trace/enabled=0 lync/contact_search/trace/enabled=0 lync/contact_search/trace/enabled=0 lync/contact_search/trace/enabled=0 lync/credentials/duration=480 lync/credentials/duration=480 lync/credentials/duration=480 lync/credentials/duration=480 lync/credentials/duration=48AJGJfFHYB201qDE12fx4J3A2EbaEHdbe1U8z8K1M lync/location_profile_description/name=apc-site-sip-trunk</pre>

2. Locate the 'CheckNetwork' field. Make sure it is set to its default of **0**.

0 = pairing across different subnets enabled

1 = pairing across different subnets disabled

4.13.7 Troubleshooting

If an issue occurs such as a pairing issue, or if an error notification is received, access the logged issue on the PC on which the Device Duo is installed, in the location equivalent to the following location:

C:\Program Files (x86)\AudioCodes\Device Duo\log

The Application Controller logs are located here:

\AppData\Local\DeviceDuo\log

Use the details of a logged issue to inform you how to troubleshoot.

4.14 Boss Admin

This section shows how to configure an Admin (delegate). Each phone can support up to five Bosses or Admins. One Boss can have up to five Admins. One Admin can have up to five Bosses. A many-to-many configuration is also supported. Admins are configured on the Boss's phone. For information on using the feature, see the *User's Manual*.

- The Boss Admin feature does not apply to the HRS.
 - Make sure your environment allows delegation for the user. If it doesn't, configuration will not work. All users must be allowed to configure all users as delegates.
 - To remove an Admin, the Boss must remove the Admin in the 'Call Forwarding Delegates' screen (open the Skype for Business client > click Call Forward Settings > click Edit my delegate members > select the Admin > click Remove). It's not enough to turn off call forwarding.
 - The 'Forward unanswered calls' parameter on the phone allows users to configure the phone to send unanswered calls to voicemail or to a phone number and to define the unanswered timeout. Timeout can be set from 5-60 seconds in 5 sec resolution.

To configure an Admin:

1. In Boss's Skype for Business client, click the handset icon and from the menu that opens, choose the **Call Forwarding Settings** option, as shown in Figure 4-34.

3			Skype for B	usiness		- 6	×
		Now <u>T</u> ools					
What	's hap	opening today	?				
C	,	Alan Robert Available ▼ APC ▼	S				
		0		Ē	ب		¢ -
Find s	omeo	ne or dial a nu	mber				Q
GRO	UPS	STATUS	RELATION	ISHIPS	NEW		<u>*</u> +
you're		cts list to make	e sure they c		ci you and	seewhe	n
	Cal	l Forwarding i	s Off				
	Inc	oming Calls					
	⇔	<u>T</u> urn Off Call	Forwarding				
	(→	Forward Calls	s To	•			
	(+	Simultaneou	sly <u>R</u> ing	<u>}</u>			
		Call Forwardi					
Q -	(CALL FORWA	RDING OFF				Δ.

Figure 4-34: Skype for Business Client – Call Forwarding Settings

2. In the screen that opens, shown below, click the **Edit my delegate members** link.

Skype for Business - Options	
General Personal Contacts List Status My Picture Phones Alerts IM Ringtones and Sounds Audio Device Video Device Call Forwarding File Saving Recording Skype Meetings	Call forwarding Learn More Calls will ring you at work and not be forwarded. S533 Calls will ring you at work and not be forwarded. Calls will be forwarded immediately and not ring your work number. Calls will be forwarded immediately and not ring your work number. Calls will ring you at work and also ring another phone or person. Your current call forwarding settings: Calls will ring you at work +97239764263. Unanswered calls will go to: (No voice mail. Calls will continuously ring for 20 seconds.) These settings will apply: All of the time Edit my team-call group members Edit my delegate members
	OK Cancel Help

Figure 4-35: Skype for Business Client - Edit my delegate members

3. In the screen that opens, shown below, click **Add** and add a contact from the list.

Figure 4-36: Skype for Business Client – Call Forwarding – Add Delegates

Call Forwarding	Call Forwarding - Delegates							
Delegates can schedule Skype Meetings, make calls, and receive calls (if the box is checked) on your behalf.								
Receive Calls	Delegate							
<u>A</u> dd	Remove							
Ri <u>n</u> g your deleg	ates after this many seconds:) - at the same time 🔹 🔻						
			OK Cance					

4. Adjacent to the added delegate in the screen that opens (Mike Dubb, shown below), make sure the **Receive Calls** option is selected:

Figure 4-37: Skype for Business Client – Call Forwarding – Added Delegate - Receive Calls

Call Forwarding - Delegates	×
Delegates can schedule Skype Meetings, make calls, and receive calls (if the box is checked) on your behalf.	
Receive Calls Delegate	
Mike Dubb	
Add	
Ring your delegates after this many seconds: 0 - at the same time 🔻	
OK Cancel	

- 5. Click OK.
- 6. Select the Simultaneously ring option and configure it to My Delegates.

General	Call forwarding
Personal	(Turn off call forwarding Learn More
Status	Calls will ring you at work and not be forwarded.
My Picture	Select from this list
Phones Alerts	Calls will be forwarded immediately and not ring your work number.
Ringtones and Sounds	Select from this list
Audio Device	Calls will ring you at work and also Select from this list New Number
Video Device Call Forwarding File Saving	Your current call forwarding settings: My Team-Call Group
The saving	Calls will ring you at work +97239764600.
	Unanswered calls will go to: (No voice mail. Calls will continuously ring for 20 seconds.)
	These settings will apply: All of the time
	Edit my team-call group members
	Edit my delegate members

Figure 4-38: Skype for Business Client – Call Forwarding – Simultaneously ring - My Delegates

7. Click **OK**; you're returned to the Skype for Business client main screen.



To remove a delegate, it's insufficient for the Boss to *turn off* Call Forwarding under the Lync client's Call Forward Settings. The Boss must also *remove* the delegate from the Call Forwarding – Delegates list.

4.14.1 Viewing Admin Lines on Boss's Phone

 ✓ Alan Roberts +97239764263
 ✓ Ami Lahav
 ✓ Mike Brzezinski
 ✓ Dubb
 ✓ OCT 15
 ✓ OCT 15
 ✓ Forward

After setting up the feature, you'll view, for example, a screen like this:



The phone screen shown here is of the C450HD but the concept is identical for the 445HD and the 450HD models.

4.14.2 Viewing Boss's Line on Admin's Phone

[Refer to the preceding figure] View Ami Lahav configured as Boss over Admin Alan Roberts' phone

4.14.3 Configuring Boss Privacy Mode

The Boss Privacy mode feature conceals a remote caller's ID from Admin's phone in order to protect their Boss's privacy.

To configure Boss Privacy mode:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Parameter Name	Description	
lync/bossPrivacyEnable	 [0] = Admin sees a remote caller's ID when they call (Default). [1] = A call from a remote caller indicates 'Private Call' on the Admin's phone instead of caller ID. The Boss's phone indicates the remote side's caller ID for all calls. 	
 If Admin has more than one Boss, the same privacy rule applies to all Bosses. The parameter is configured per phone rather than per user. 		

• The Boss's phone indicates the remote side's caller ID for all calls.

Table 4-12: Boss Privacy	/ Mode Parameter
--------------------------	------------------

4.15 Enabling the Delegated Line Feature

[Applies only to the 445HD phone] When this feature is enabled, the phones' sidecars display active calls. Each phone can present up to 12 calls (the number of sidecar keys). Up to eight calls can be handled simultaneously. The color of the BLF key adjacent to each call displayed in the sidecars indicates the call's status:

- Red = ongoing call on another phone that is configured with the same user
- Flashing red = call on hold on another phone that is configured with the same user
- Green = ongoing call on the phone
- Flashing green = call on hold which can be resumed or picked up by another phone that is configured with the same user

To enable the feature:

- 1. Configure the following on the phone:
 - New configuration parameter *lync/sidecardSL=1*
 - Make sure parameter provisioning/speed_dial_uri=NULL
- 2. Associate a 'Delegate' with the user. The delegator can only delegate this user, none other. See the *User's Manual* for information on defining delegates.
 - The feature promotes fairness in response to incoming calls. Multiple incoming calls (ringing but not answered yet, i.e., displayed in the phone's screen but not in the phone's sidecar), are presented from the oldest waiting calls to the newest incoming calls. The focus is on the oldest waiting calls.
 - When the phone has a call on hold, picking up the handset initiates a new call. It does not resume the last active call.
 - Making an outbound call while an incoming call is presented functions as follows: If the user is already handling one or more calls (ongoing or held), a newly incoming call will be displayed on top and in focus. To make a new call and not accept the incoming call, the user navigates to one of the ongoing/held calls, presses the **Menu** softkey, and selects the NEW CALL option.
 - If one of the held calls are disconnected by the far end, other calls will remain on hold; the user will not be prompted to resume one of the held calls.
 - After a call is answered by one of the phones, all the other phones will display this call in their sidecars.

Calls are picked up by pressing the BLF LED when it flashes red or green.

4. Configuring Microsoft Skype for Business Features

4.15.1 Configuring Boss Admin Delegated Line

4.15.1.1 Configuring Multiple Points of Presence (MPOPs)

Use a fake Admin **dummy@domain.com** who can define a Boss even though phoneless. Fake Admin does not occupy any screen Programmable Key. The phone does not indicate a fake Admin.

4.15.1.2 Configuring Boss-Admin Sidecar Functionality



Applies to the 445HD phone.

To configure Boss-Admin sidecar functionality:

1. Set the configuration file parameter 'lync/SideCarUse' to **MULTIPLE_BOSS_ADMIN**. Boss and Admin will be able to utilize the phone's sidecar to manage active and held calls in the queue.



The legacy configuration parameter 'lync/sidecardSL' became obsolete as of version 3.0.1. If 'lync/sidecardSL' was previously configured to **1**, after updating to 3.0.1 it will automatically be set to **0** and the parameter 'lync/SideCarUse' (see below) will be configured to **SHARED_LINE** to maintain backward compatibility.

- When the 'lync/SideCarUse' configuration file parameter is configured to MULTIPLE_BOSS_ADMIN:
 - Admin can see in the sidecar each Boss queue
 - Boss can see in the sidecar all Boss calls in the queue
 - A mix of Admin and Boss can be also used in this mode
 - Users can still use the sidecar for Speed Dial/BLF. The upper sidecar key allows users to switch between BLF and Boss/Admin queues.
 - See the phone's *User's Manual* for detailed information on how to use this feature.
- **3.** When the 'lync/SideCarUse' configuration file parameter is configured to **SPEED_DIAL_ONLY** (default), Boss and Admin will be able to use the sidecar for Speed Dials only.
- 4. When the 'lync/SideCarUse' configuration file parameter is configured to SHARED_LINE the delegate feature that existed up to version 3.0.1 set the configuration file parameter 'provisioning/speed_dial_uri' to NULL. Configure the configuration file parameter 'voip/number_of_calls_per_line'. This determines the number of calls that can be handled simultaneously per phone. Multiple calls can be handled. Switching between them can be performed. This is very advantageous for receptionists. The setting is customer-specific. It can be 8x [number of Boss phones]. However, the 13th call and up are unmanageable in the sidecar (no appearance, no pick up). Even if an index becomes free, the 13th call and up will not occupy the free index. A newly free index will be occupied by the next incoming call.

4.16 Configuring a Distinctive Ring on the Phone of Each Boss

The network administrator can configure a distinctive ring on the phone of each configured Boss using the configuration file. Distinctive ring tones help Admins audially distinguish between their Bosses phones when calls come in, optimizing Admins' work efficiency.

The feature allows control over the volume of Admin's ringtone in the Boss's phone as well as control over the volume of the Boss's ringtone in Admin's phone.

The configuration can also be performed from the Admin's phone menu option Settings > Distinctive Ringing (see the phone's *User's Manual* for details).

To configure a distinctive ring tone on the phone of a Boss:

Use the table below as reference.

Parameter Name	Description
lync/delegate/boss/[0-6]/distinRingtone	Allows Admins to audially distinguish between their Bosses phones when calls come in. An Admin can configure a specific ringtone for each Boss. This can be configured from Menu > Settings > Boss Ring Tone. The network administrator can also configure the ring on the phone of each configured Boss through the configuration file parameter /lync/delegate/boss/[0-6]/distinRingtone. Ring01 (Default) Ring02 Ring03 Ring04 Ring05 Ring06 Ring07 Ring08 Ring09 Ring10
lync/delegate/boss/0/distinRingSignalLevel	 Ring11 Allows configuration of the volume level for the type of
	ring configured with the previous parameter. Range: -32 (silence) to 6 (top volume)

4.17 Configuring Phones to Operate in an OVR Deployment

Network administrators can configure phones to operate in an OVR (One Voice Resiliency) deployment, supporting dhcpoption160.cfg. New configuration file parameters are:

- lync/sign_in/fixed_outbound_proxy_address=<SBC IP address>
- Iync/sign_in/fixed_outbound_proxy_port=<SBC listening port> (Default: 0)
- Iync/sign_in/use_hosting_outbound_proxy=1

For detailed information on configuring this feature, see the One-Voice Resiliency (OVR) Configuration Note available from AudioCodes.

4.18 Disabling Local 3-Way Conferencing Capability

This section shows how to remove the capability of local 3-way conferencing from users.

To disable local 3-way conferencing:

Use the table below as reference.

Table 4-14: Removing Local 3-Way Conferencing Capability from Users - Parameter

Parameter	Description
lync/local3wayConf/enabled	 [0] = the Conf softkey is not displayed in the screen when a call is in progress, as shown in the figure below [1] = the Conf softkey is displayed in the screen when a call is in progress (default)

4.19 Blocking All Phone Users from Signing Out

This section shows how to block *all phone users* from signing out (overrides the Common Area parameter 'voip/common_area/enhanced_mode').

To block all phone users from signing out:

Use the table below as reference.

Table 4-15: Blocking All Users from Signing out - Parameter

Parameter	Description
lync/userSetting/prevent_user_sign_out	[0] = Sign out softkey is displayed in screens (default)
	[1] = Sign out softkey is not displayed in screens

4.20 Enabling HotDesking

The HotDesk feature applies to enterprises that operate according to a 'touch-down desk' concept. Employees in these enterprises typically travel frequently to remote branches, or work in shifts. They can sign in to a phone that is already signed in by another user (CAP or regular) without signing out the original user to whom the phone was assigned for primary use.

When the HotDesk user signs out or if the phone stays in idle state longer than the HotDesk timeout defined on the server, the phone automatically returns to its original user and state; its configuration and data are preserved as they were before the phone was leased for HostDesk use. HotDesk users cannot perform all operations that the original user (CAP or regular) could perform, for example, change Language.

Network administrators must enable the feature on the server by setting parameter *EnableHotDesking* to 'True'.

🔁 Administrator: Windows PowerShell	
PS C:\Users\administrator.AC5PIP> get-CsClier	ntPolicy
	Global
	: O
Description	
	: WebSearchAndFileDownload
AttendantSafeTransfer	
AutoDiscoveryRetryInterval	
	:
ouronaar oodoor abritatoa toniin oor var	:
	:
one contact on the point of the	:
CustomStateUrl	
DGRefreshInterval	
DisableCalendarPresence	
DisableFeedsTab	:
DisableFederatedPromptDisplayName 3	:
DisableFreeBusyInfo	:
DisableHandsetŐnLockedMachine	
	:
DisableInkIM	
DisableOneNote12Integration	
DisablePhonePresence	
DisablePICPromptDisplayName :	
DisablePoorDeviceWarnings	
DisablePoorNetworkWarnings	
DisablePresenceNote	
DisableSavingIM	
	: AllPhotos
EnableAppearOffline	
	True
	True
	True
EnableFullScreenVideo	
EnableHighPerformanceConferencingAppSharing	False
EnableHotdesking	True

4.21 Uploading Logs to Microsoft Server for Support Purposes

An integrated log upload feature allows network administrators to upload logs from the phone to the Microsoft server for troubleshooting/support purposes, in compliance with Microsoft's certification requirements for 3rd party Skype for Business clients.

If a user experiences an irregularity such as poor voice quality, they'll contact an AudioCodes Field Application Engineer (FAE) who will instruct them to upload and send the logs for analysis. The FAE then downloads the logs to their PC, performs the analysis, and provides a fix.

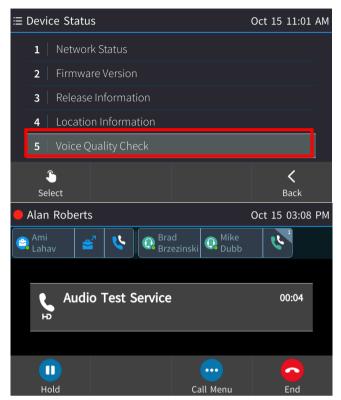
To perform log upload:

- 1. Press the phone's MENU hard key and then open the Settings menu.
- In the Settings menu, navigate to and select the Log upload option; the notification Uploading log file is displayed and then replaced by the notification Log upload finished.

Enabling an IP Phone Voice Quality Check 4.22

Features

IP phone voice quality can be tested through the phone's Device Status menu.



If selected, an invitation is played to "Record a short message after the tone then wait to hear how you sound". To enable the feature, the network administrator must enter the following command on the Skype for Business server:

set-CsAudioTestServiceApplication -Enabled \$True

- Additionally, the 'Identity' parameter must be configured with the the SIP address of the audio test service contact to be modified. For example:
- <sip:RtcApplication-bc516080-3233-42f2-a732-826dd6f99702@audio-codes.info>

4.23 Signing in / out with the Web Interface

The Web interface can be used to sign in to and out of the phone.

To sign in to and out of the phone using the Web interface:

1. In the Web interface, open the Sign-In page (Configuration tab > Lync sign in > Sign in).

Figure 4-39: Sign-in – Content Blocked Page

AudioCodes 440HD	💼 Home 🛛 😁 Log Off		
Contiguration Management Status 8 Diagnostics If @ Quick Setup If @ Quick Setup If @ Personal Settings If @ Network Connections If @ Advanced Applications If @ Advanced Applications If @ Low sign in Sign in ^{SS}		because it was not signed by a valid security certificate. "About Certificate Errors" in Internet Explorer Help.	
		If you don't see the page above, <u>open it</u> in new window!	
		Internet Explorer blocked this website from displaying content with security certificate errors.	Show content ×

2. Click the open it link and then click Show content.

Figure 4-40: Sign-in – Windows Security Prompt

)	There is a problem with this website's security certificate.
	The security certificate presented by this website was not issued by a trusted certificate authority. The security certificate presented by this website was issued for a different website's address.
	Security certificate problems may indicate an attempt to fool you or intercept any data you send to the server.
	We recommend that you close this webpage and do not continue to this website.
	Click here to close this webpage.
	Continue to this website (not recommended).
	More information

3. Click the Continue to this website (not recommended) link.

Figure 4-41: Windows Security Prompt

Windows Security	×	
The server 10.59.1.39 at IP Phone requires a username and password.		
admin •••• Remember my credentials		
OK Canc	el	

4. In the Windows Security prompt, enter the username and password and then click **OK**.

Figure 4-42: Sign-in v	with	PIN	Code
------------------------	------	-----	------

AudioCodes 400HD Codes				
Configuration Management Status & Diagnostics				
	Sign-in Method:	Username & Password Pin Code		
🖲 📄 Quick Setup	Phone number:	4016		
Personal Settings	Pin code:			
Detwork Connections			Sign in Sign out	
Orice Over IP				
Gerity Advanced Applications				
Gardeneed appreciations Gardeneed appreciations				
Sign in ^{SSL}				

Figure 4-43: Sign-in with Username & Password

▼ Sign-In	
Sign-in Method:	🖲 Username & Password 🔿 Pin Code
Sign-in address:	hakshur1@audio-codes.info
User name:	domain\name
Password:	*****
	Sign in Sign

- 5. Select the Sign-in Method. Choose either Username & Password or Pin Code.
- 6. In the ' Phone Number' field, enter the number of the phone.
- 7. [Only applies to signing in with Username & Password] In the 'User name' field, enter the domain name and username.
- 8. In the 'Pin code' field, enter the PIN code.
- 9. Click Sign in / Sign out
 - a. If the phoned is signed out, click the activated **Sign in** button.
 - **b.** If the phoned is signed in, click the activated **Sign out** button.

4.24 Signing in and Authenticating with Microsoft's Cloud PBX

The phones feature the capability to sign in to (connect to) and authenticate with Microsoft's Cloud PBX, Microsoft's cloud-hosted version of enterprise voice. AudioCodes' phone features two new sign-in method options, allowing users to connect to Microsoft's Cloud PBX:

- OrgID (Organizational ID), which is the default authentication method in 2016. In 2017, the ADAL method will become the default (see the next option).
- ADAL (Azure AD Authentication Library). Enables the phone to authenticate using OAuth. In 2017, OAth will replace OrgID, which will deprecate. OAuth 2.0 was implemented in the phone wrapped in ADAL, as described in <u>RFC 6749</u>.

4.25 Initiating a Skype for Business Server Based Phone Conference

The phone supports Multi-Party Skype for Business Remote Conferencing utilizing CCCP (Centralized Conference Control Protocol). Using the new 'Meet Now' option or pressing the **Conf** softkey during an ongoing call, users can initiate, join or be added to a multi-party conference call while having full control and viewing capability. Users can view the roster – see other participants and their status (like the Mute option, Hold status), mute/unmute other participants, manage the conference status as lock/unlock, manage the lobby for conference calls that lobby is defined, admit/deny other participants, and add users into the conference.

The **Meet Now** softkey is defined by default; it enables users to easily initiate remote Skype for Business conference calls.

In versions prior to 3.0, supported conference capability was *locally based* (*phone* based) and limited to two more users, or *remote based*, with more than two parties from the Skype for Business client, using the BToE feature.

4.26 **Provisioning the Server for Downloading Contacts Pictures**

The network administrator must provision inband provisioning parameters for downloading contacts pictures from the Skype for Business Address Book Server (ABS) or from the Exchange Web Services (EWS).

To provision for downloading contacts pictures from the ABS or EWS:

Use the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
PhotoUsage	 Configure either: AllPhotos (Default) [All contacts pictures can be downloaded] NoPhoto [Contacts pictures will not be downloaded] PhotoFromADOnly [Contacts pictures can only be downloaded from Microsoft's Active Directory]
AbsWebServiceEnabled	 True (Default) [Contacts pictures can be downloaded to the phone from Microsoft's Active Directory] False [Contacts pictures cannot be downloaded to the phone from Microsoft's Active Directory]
<absinternalserverurl></absinternalserverurl>	Defines the Address Book Service (ABS) URL for downloading contacts pictures from the Active Directory. This URL points to an <i>internal ABS server</i> . Example: <i>https://sippoolAM30E06.infra.lync.com:9999/abs/handler</i>
<absexternalserverurl></absexternalserverurl>	Defines the Address Book Service (ABS) URL for downloading contacts pictures from the Active Directory. This URL points to an external ABS server. Example: https://webpoolAM30E06.infra.lync.com:443/abs/handler

4.26.1 Disabling Contacts Pictures

The screens of the 450HD phone, 450HD + Expansion Module, C450HD phone, C450HD + Expansion Module, 445HD phone and the HRS by default display contacts pictures. Contacts pictures are displayed with idle screen Speed Dials (including presence statuses), Favorites, Corporate Directory, Personal Directory, Exchange Contacts, other contacts lists, incoming calls, outgoing calls, conference calls, visual voice mail and call logs. Enterprises typically won't disable the feature but if enterprises or employees want it disabled, the network administrator can disable it locally on the phone.

To disable the phone from displaying contacts pictures:

Use the table below as reference.

5	
Parameter	Description
lync/ContactPicture/IPPPhotoUsage	 [INBAND] (Default) [Phone performs according to the inband provisioning parameter] [NOPHOTO] [No contacts pictures are displayed; overrides the inband provisioning parameter] [ALLPHOTOS] [All contacts pictures can be displayed; overrides the inband provisioning parameter]

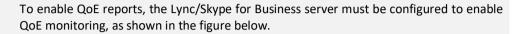
Table 4-17: Local Phone Parameters for Downloading Contact Pictures

In the Skype for Business client (see the figure below), users can reserve their right to hide their pictures so even when both parameters above are set to **All photos**, if user B uses the client to hide their picture, others won't be able to see it.

General	My picture	
Personal Contacts List Status My Picture Phones Alerts IM Ringtones and Sounds Audio Device Video Device Call Forwarding File Saving Recording Skype Meetings	 Hide my picture Note: People will still see your picture on the contact card and outside of Skype for Business. Show my picture People will see your picture. If you change it, they might not see the new one right away. Edit or Remove Picture 	Preview Loading
	Show a picture from a website Enter a web address and check the connection.	Connect to Picture

4.27 Enabling QoE Reports to be Sent to Microsoft's SQL Server

Quality of Experience (QoE) reports can be sent to Microsoft's SQL server. A SIP Service message containing a QoE .xml report is sent inband from the phone to Microsoft's FE server at the end of every phone call. The FE server then sends it to Microsoft's SQL server from which third-party applications such as AudioCodes' Session Experience Manager (SEM), in addition to Microsoft's Report Server, can pull and present the information graphically for network administrators to use to optimize and enhance enterprise telephony.



Lync Server 2013	Administrator Sign or
Lyne Server 201.	5.0.8308.556 Privacy statement
Home	Call Detail Recording Quality of Experience Data Archiving Policy Archiving Configuration
强 Users	
Topology	Edit Quality of Experience (QoE) Setting - Global
IM and Presence	Commit X Cancel
Persistent Chat	Scope: Global Name: *
Voice Routing	Global
Voice Features	C Enable monitoring of QoE data
Response Groups	✓ Enable purging of QoE data
D Conferencing	Keep QoE data for maximum duration (days): 60
Clients	
Federation and External Access	
Monitoring and Archiving	
Security	
Network Configuration	

To enable the feature:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Table 4-18: Enabling QoE Reports using the Configuration	n File
Tuble + 10. Enubling QUE hepoints using the configuration	i i iic

Parameter Name	Description
voip/rtcp_xr/vq_statistics/mode	Enables / disables QoE reports to be sent to Microsoft's SQL server.
	[0] Disable[1] Enable (default)

The RX50 conference phone supports Voice Quality reports in compliance with the IETF's RFC 6035, except for the following VQ local metrics that are not provided:

- Jitter buffer statistics
- Burst and Gapp loss
- Signal and noise levels
- Voice Quality estimation

4.28 Enabling Malicious Call Tracing

Phone users can report a malicious call if the (new) parameter option 'Enable malicious call tracing' on the Skype for Business server is selected, as indicated in the figure below.

Lyr	nc Server 2013		Administrator Sign out
,			5.0.8308.872 Privacy statement
合	Home	Dial Plan Voice Policy Route PSTN Usage Trunk Configuration Test Voice Routing	
33	Users	Create voice routing test case information	×
24	Topology		
Ģ	IM and Presence	Edit Voice Policy - ChinaLync2013	
8	Persistent Chat	V OK X Cancel	0
1	Voice Routing	Scope: Site Name: *	
S	Voice Features	ChinaLync2013	
22	Response Groups	Description:	
Q)	Conferencing		
5	Clients	 ^ Calling Features ✓ Enable call forwarding ✓ Enable team call 	
	Federation and	✓ Enable can forwarung ✓ Enable delegation ✓ Enable PSTN reroute	
<u>à</u>	External Access	✓ Enable call transfer Enable bandwidth policy override	
	Monitoring and Archiving	✓ Enable call park ✓ Enable malicious call tracing	
	Security	✓ Enable simultaneous ringing of phones	
9	Network	Associated PSTN Usages	
*	Configuration	🔶 New 🛀 Select 🥖 Show detailt Remove 🍲 🦊	
		PSTN usage record Associated routes	
		CH local route LocalRoute, AC Lab Route	
		Internal China	
		Local China	
		Long Distance China	
		Call forwarding and simultaneous ringing PSTN unages	
		Route using the call PSTN usages 🔹 🕐	
		Translated number to test:	

If a user gets a malicious call and wants to report it, the option allows them to send a report to the Skype for Business server (see the *User's Manual* for more information).

4.29 Disabling the C450HD IP Phone Screen Saver

The C450HD phone features a screen saver displaying a digital clock. The feature allows future customization of the phone. By default, the feature is enabled, but the network administrator can disable it on request.

To disable the feature:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Parameter Name	Description	
personal_settings/ScreenSaverEnabled	Enables / disables the C450HD phone screen saver. [0] Disable [1] Enable (default)	
personal_settings/ScreenSaverAwakeTimeout	The timeout of the screen saver is triggered after 300 seconds by default but it can be configured to 0-600 seconds using this parameter.	

Table 4-19: Disabling the C450HD IP Phone Screen Saver

4.30 Registering the Phone on Azure Cloud

The phone supports a client ID for OAuth 2.0 modern authentication in compliance with IETF RFC 6749 and in compliance with Microsoft's request to register the phone application on the Azure cloud service portal and to apply permissions.

The network administrator can enable the new client ID to be used after it's approved. See also <u>https://online.audiocodes.com/oauth-2-0-appid</u>.

To enable the client ID:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Parameter Name	Description
lync/sign_in/azure/Enable_new_client_id	 [0] The phone will use the previous client_id as part of the Oauth2.0 process. [1] The phone will use a new client_id as part of the Oauth2.0 process (default).

Table 4-20: Enabling the Client ID using the Configuration File

5 Maintenance

This section shows how to upgrade the phone firmware, perform administration tasks, and enable remote management.

- See under Section 4.9 for information on how to automatically update the phone's firmware from the Skype for Business server.
- See Section 5.1 below for information on how to upgrade the phone's firmware with the firmware file received from AudioCodes.
- See under Section 4.9.3 for information on how to manually check if the firmware on the phone is different to the firmware file located on the provisioning server.
- See Section 5.2 for information on how to enable automatically checking for firmware updates using the Configuration File.

5.1 Upgrading Phone Firmware

This section shows how to upgrade the phone firmware.

To upgrade the phone firmware:

- 1. After receiving the new img firmware file from AudioCodes, save it to a location on your PC.
- Open the 'Manual firmware upgrade' page (Management tab > Manual Update > Manual firmware upgrade).

Figure 5-1: Manual Firmware Upgrade

Please select a file to upgrade.						
Firmware File Location:				Browse		
					Submit	

- 3. Click **Browse...**, navigate to the img file on your PC, and then click **Submit**; the phone screen displays the upgrade process (see the *User's Manual* for details).
- 4. On the phone, press the MENU key and select Status > Firmware Version.
- 5. Make sure the firmware is the version of the img file you received from AudioCodes, applicable to the phone model.

5.2 Enabling/Disabling Device Update

The phone checks for firmware updates when it boots up and once every timeperiod defined in its Configuration File.

Default: Once every 24 hours.

The phone checks for firmware updates using the HTTP POST web service. The URL is extracted from the inband provisioning information under:

- updatesServerInternalUrl
- updatesServerExternalUrl

Two in-band provisioning parameters enable the device update feature: 'updatesServerEnabled' and 'EnableDeviceUpdate'.

If 'updatesServerEnabled' is set to **true** and 'EnableDeviceUpdate' is set to any value except **false**, the phone will enable the device update feature.

In addition to these in-band provisioning parameters, the phone has a local configuration parameter 'SfBDeviceUpdate'. This parameter allows the administrator to disable the automatic device update feature even if the feature is enabled by the in-band provisioning parameters.

To enable/disable the device update feature:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table below as reference.

Parameter Name	Description
lync/SfBDeviceUpdate	 Enables or disables the device update feature: 0] The phone will get firmware updates from the device update service only if the phone didn't get a firmware URL from DHCP Options or from Static URL configuration, and if the in-band provisioning parameters enable the feature (default). 1] The phone will get firmware updates from the device update service if the in-band provisioning parameters enable the feature.

Table 5-1: Automatically Checking for Updates Using the Configuration File

5.3 Administration

5.3.1 Managing Users

İ

You can change the phone's login user name and password. This is the login required to access the Web interface and the **Administration** menu in the phone's screen.

- For the Administrator account, the default 'Username' and 'Password' is admin and 1234 respectively. It's advisable for the network administrator to change it to prevent unauthorized access.
 - For the User account, the default 'Username' and 'Password' is **user** and **1234** respectively.

To change the login username and password:

• Use the tables below as reference.

Parameter	Description
Note: To add a value to these parameters, enter system/ followed by the parameter name, equal sign and then the value (e.g. system/user_name=admin).	
system/user_name	The phone user name. The default value is admin. If this parameter value is unconfigured in the configuration file, users can log in to the Web interface using the same Microsoft password/PIN they used to sign in to the IP phone (to maintain backward compatibility). Note: This parameter is applicable only to the Web and Telnet interfaces.
system/password	The encrypted phone password. The default value is 1234. If this parameter value is unconfigured in the configuration file, users can log in to the Web interface using the same Microsoft password/PIN they used to sign in to the IP phone (to maintain backward compatibility). To generate an encrypted password, see Section 3.5. Note: This parameter applies to the Web and Telnet interfaces, and to the screen display.

Table 5-2: Administrator account - Username and Password

Table 5-3: User account - Username and Password

Parameter	Description
system/web_user_name	The phone user name. Default: user. Applies only to Web and Telnet interfaces.
system/web_user_password	The encrypted phone password. Default: 1234. Applies only to Web and Telnet interfaces, and phone screen. It's advisable for the network administrator to change the default to prevent unauthorized access.

5.3.2 Managing the Web Login Sign-in Option

The Web Login method of signing in to the phone features a secure HTTPS protocol between the web browser and the phone. The Device Manager server intermediates between the user's internet browser and the phone. Version 7.4.3000 and later of the Device Manager supports the feature. If

the user has a version that's earlier than this, the Device Manager falls back to the previous Web Login and allows the user to sign-in by browsing directly to the server.

Network administrators can enable or disable the feature using a new configuration file parameter 'ems_server/EMS_WEB_Login'.

- [1] Enable (Default)
- [2] Disable

5.3.3 Allowing / Disallowing Management via the Web Interface

Network administrators can allow / disallow management via the phone's Web interface without requiring a phone reboot. The configuration file parameter 'system/web/enabled' supports the feature.

- **0** disallows management via the phone's Web interface
- **1** (default) allows management via the phone's Web interface

5.3.4 Restoring Defaults

See Section 8.7.1.2 on page 195, under General Corrective Actions.

5.3.5 Restarting the Phone

See Section 8.7.4.2 on page 198, under General Corrective Actions.

5.4 Enabling Remote Management

5.4.1 Enabling Telnet Access

Telnet access can be enabled using the Configuration File.



Opening a Telnet connection in an external network is strongly inadvisable due to the widely recognized vulnerability of the protocol.

To configure Telnet:

 Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameter using the table as reference.

Table 5-4: Telnet Parameters

Parameter	Description
Note: To add a value to these parameters, enter management/ followed by the parameter name, equal and then the value (e.g. management/telnet/enabled=0).	
management/telnet/enabled	 Enables telnet access to the phone. [0] Disable (default) [1] Enable
	The user name and password for telnet access are according to the parameters: system/user_name and system/password .

5.4.2 Enabling SSH Access

Secure Shell (SSH) protocol can be configured for secure remote login to the 450HD, C450HD and 445HD phones and the HRS. Network administrators can use configuration file parameter 'management/ssh/enabled' to enable the feature (by default, it is set to **0**, i.e., disabled).

6 Status and Performance

6.1 Viewing Network Status

This section shows how to view network status from the Web interface.

6.1.1 Viewing LAN Status

This section shows how to view LAN status information.

To view LAN status information:

Open the Network Status page (Status & Diagnostics tab > System Status menu > Network Status).

LAN Information		
Type:	DHCP Client	
IP Address:	10.16.2.162	
Subnet Mask:	255.255.0.0	
Default Gateway Address:	10.16.0.1	
Primary DNS:	10.1.1.11	
Secondary DNS:	10.1.1.10	
MAC Address:	00:90:8F:1E:DB:3E	

Figure 6-1: Web Interface - LAN Information

6.1.2 Viewing Port Mode Status

This section shows how to view the Port Mode status.

To view port mode status:

Open the Network Status page (Status & Diagnostics tab > System Status menu > Network Status).

Port Mode Status		
Attribute	LAN Port	PC Port
Link State:	Up	Down
Negotiation:	Automatic	Automatic
Speed:	100Mbps	N/A
Duplex:	Full	N/A

6.1.3 Viewing 802.1X Status

This section shows how to view 802.1X status.

To view 802.1X status:

Open the Network Status page (Status & Diagnostics tab > System Status menu > Network Status).

802.1X Status		
	EAP Type:	EAP-TLS
	Status:	Failure: No certificates

6.2 Viewing VoIP Status

This section shows how to view VoIP status using the Web interface.

6.2.1 Viewing Phone Status

This section shows how to view the phone status.

To view the phone status:

Open the VoIP Status page (Status & Diagnostics tab > System Status menu > VoIP Status) and locate the section 'Phone Status'.

Figure 6-4: Web Interface - Phone Status

Phone Status		
	Hook State	On Hook
	Audio Device	Ringer

6.2.2 Viewing Line Status

This section describes how to view the line status.

To view the line status:

Open the VoIP Status page (Status & Diagnostics tab > System Status menu > VoIP Status) and locate the section 'Line Status'.

Figure 6-5: Web Interface - Line Status

Line Status	
Line Number	Line 1
SIP Registration	Registered
DnD	On
Mute	Off
Forward State	Disabled
Forward Destination	N/A

6.2.3 Viewing Call Information

The Web interface displays call information of a currently established call.

To view call information after establishing a call:

Open the VoIP Status page (Status & Diagnostics tab > System Status menu > VoIP Status) and locate the 'Call Information' section.

Line 1 Call Information		
Call Number	Call 1	
Call State	Connected	
Origin	Outgoing	
Remote Number	+97239764232	
Remote ID		
Duration	00:00:21	
Codec	PCMU	
Packets Sent	6104	
Packets Received	4223	
Bytes Sent	976640	
Bytes Received	675680	
Packets Lost	0	
Fraction Lost	N/A	
Jitter	0	
Round Trip Delay	0	

Figure 6-6: Web Interface - Call Information

6.3 Viewing Call History

The Web interface displays received and missed calls, dialed numbers and call duration.

To view call history:

1. Open the Call History page (Status & Diagnostics tab > History > Call History).

	Number	Time	Delete
420HD	1000 Dial	06/01/2000 Thursday 21:21:31	
420HD	1000 Dial	06/01/2000 Thursday 21:17:38	
Alan_2	2000 Dial	06/01/2000 Thursday 21:14:26	
420HD	1000 Dial	06/01/2000 Thursday 19:24:49	
420HD	1000 Dial	06/01/2000 Thursday 19:13:29	
Alan_2	2000 Dial	06/01/2000 Thursday 19:13:22	
	420HD Alan_2 420HD 420HD	420HD 1000 Dial Alan_2 2000 Dial 420HD 1000 Dial 420HD 1000 Dial	420HD 1000 Dal 06/01/2000 Thursday 21:17:38 Alan_2 2000 Dial 06/01/2000 Thursday 21:14:26 420HD 1000 Dial 06/01/2000 Thursday 19:24:49 420HD 1000 Dial 06/01/2000 Thursday 19:24:49 420HD 1000 Dial 06/01/2000 Thursday 19:13:29

Figure 6-7: Web Interface - Call History

- From the 'Type' dropdown, select the call history type, i.e., Missed Calls, Received Calls, or Dialed Numbers that you want to view; the table lists the call history according to the call history type you select.
- 3. To delete an entry, select the entry's 'Delete' option and click **Delete**.

6.4 Viewing Phone Model / Firmware Version

This section shows how to view the phone model and the phone's firmware version from the the phone's screen.

6.4.1 Viewing from the Phone's Screen

This section shows how to view phone model and firmware version from the phone's screen.

To view the phone's model and firmware version from the screen:

Open the Firmware Version screen (MENU key > Status > Firmware Version).

6.4.2 Viewing Release Information

This section shows how to view release information in the Web interface.

To view release information in the Web interface:

Open the Release Information page (Status & Diagnostics tab > System Information > Release Information).

Figure 6-8: Web Interface - System Information - Release Information

elease Info	ease Information	
	BLVERSION	3.3.10
	BUILD_TIME	2018-03-13_17:21:37
	DSPFWVERSION	494E002ce2.720.32
	HW_TYPE	450HD
	LOG	0
	SWVERSION	UC_3.1.0.296
	SW_TYPE	LYNC

7 Diagnostics

This section shows how to perform diagnostics.

7.1 Logging

7.1.1 Analyzing and Debugging Traffic using Syslog

This section shows how to use the System Logging (Syslog) feature which allows administrators to track and monitor syslog information, facilitating traffic analysis and debugging the phone.

The feature includes one centralized log in the Web interface's System Logging page, shown in the figure below.

For each log module, a log level can be configured: **None**, **Basic** or **Detailed**. The feature can be configured using the Configuration File.

To configure system logging:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameters using the table below as reference.



If you disable Syslog after enabling it, it's important to revert all parameter settings back to **None**.

Parameter	Description
system/syslog/log_level	Defines the System Logging feature's log level. Possible values are:
	 None = make unavailable / disable Basic = basic debug level
	 Detailed = detailed debug for developers (debug version required)
system/syslog/mode	Defines the System Logging feature's destination. Possible values are:
	 Local = No Syslog, i.e., the phone's flash memory (default). Network = a.k.a. Syslog server. Basic debug level. Serial = a.k.a. Console. You'll need to connect a serial cable to view the logs. All = Syslog is sent to the Syslog server and the phone console (Network and Console).
system/syslog/server_address	Only displayed when 'Log Destination' is Network or All . Defines the IP address (in dotted-decimal notation) of the PC host you are using to run the Syslog server (e.g. Wireshark), to where the Syslog messages should be sent. The Syslog server is an application designed to collect the logs and error messages generated by the phone. Default: 0.0.0.0 .

Table 7-1: Syslog Parameters

Parameter	Description
system/syslog/server_port	Defines the log module which generates Syslog messages related to the UDP port of the Syslog server. Range: 0 to 65,535. Default: 514. Note: This parameter is applicable when Log Destination (see above) is set to Network or Both .
Process - nxphone	Defines the log module process executed on the phone which generates Syslog messages related to the phone application responsible for user interface representation (front end) on the screens (main screen, BLF screen and sidecar).
Process - voip_task	Defines the log module which generates Syslog messages related to the multi-layer VoIP application. Default: None.
system/syslog/component/control_center	Defines the log module process executed on the phone which generates Syslog messages related to networking. Default: None.
Process - b2goe	Defines the log module process executed on the phone which generates Syslog messages related to AudioCodes' B2GoE USB driver. Default: None.
Process - lighttpd	Defines the log module process executed on the phone which generates Syslog messages related to the lighttpd webserver. Default: None.
Process - ac_watchdog	Defines the log module process executed on the phone which generates Syslog messages related to Watchdog process. Default: None.
system/syslog/component/sip_call_control	Defines the log module process executed on the phone which generates Syslog messages related to Multimedia Terminal Framework (MTF) responsible for VoIP standards. Default: None
system/syslog/component/sip_stack	Defines the log module process executed on the phone which generates Syslog messages related to SIP (RFC 3261). Default: None
system/syslog/component/ice_stack	Defines the log module which generates Syslog messages related to ICE (Interactive Connectivity Establishment). Default: None
system/syslog/component/lcd_display	Defines the log module which generates Syslog messages related to the phone screen display. Default: Debug
system/syslog/component/web_server	Defines the log module which generates Syslog messages related to the phone's Web server. Default: None
system/syslog/component/ieee802_1x	Defines the log module which generates Syslog messages related to the 802.1X security protocol. Default: None
system/syslog/component/kernel	Defines the log module which generates Syslog messages related to the operating system core.
system/syslog/component/dsp	Defines the log module which generates Syslog messages related to the phone's DSP (voice engine) commands.
system/syslog/component/lib	Defines the log module which generates Syslog messages related to the internal library of the IP phone. Default: None.
system/syslog/component/sipe	Defines the log module which generates Syslog messages related to the SIPE Project's third-party Pidgin plugin for Microsoft Skype for Business client.
system/syslog/component/cgi	Defines the log module which generates Syslog messages related to the services for the Web server.

7.1.2 Analyzing and Debugging Traffic using Syslog

A syslog logging mechanism allows you to perform phone logging without affecting phone performance.

To enable the Lightweight Syslog:

- In the Web interface, open the phone's System Logging page (Status & Diagnostics tab > Diagnostics > Syslog Config).
- 2. Change the 'Log Destination' parameter from its default Local to Network.
- 3. Provide a valid IP address and server port.
- 4. Do not set any of the options (keep all as **None**).
- 5. Click Submit.

7.2 Enabling Recording to Debug Voice

This section shows how to use recording capability to debug voice activity on the phone. You can enable the capability using the Configuration File.

To enable recording to debug voice:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameters using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
voip/packet_recording/remote_ip	The IP address (in dotted-decimal notation) of the remote computer to which the recorded packets are sent. The recorded packets should be captured by a network sniffer (such as Wireshark). The default value is 0.0.0.0.
voip/packet_recording/remote_port	Defines the UDP port of the remote computer to which the recorded packets are sent. The valid range is 1024 to 65535. The default value is 50000.
voip/packet_recording/enabled	 Activates the packet recording mechanism. [0] Disable (default) [1] Enable Note: DSP packet recording can be enabled on the fly, without requiring the network administrator to reset the phone.
voip/packet_recording/rtp_recording/enabled	 Only displayed in the Web interface if 'Enable DSP Recording' is enabled. Enables RTP recording. [0] Disable (default) [1] Enable

Table 7-2: Packet Recording Parameters

Parameter	Description
voip/packet_recording/ec_debug_recording/enabled	Activates the Echo Canceller Debug recording.
	[0] Disable (default)[1] Enable
voip/packet_recording/cng_debug_recording/enabled	Activates the generic Comfort Noise Generation debug recording.
	[0] Disable (default)[1] Enable
voip/packet_recording/noise_reduction_recording/enabled	Traffic on the network stops when the MUTE key is activated.
	[0] Disable (default)[1] Enable
voip/packet_recording/network_recording/enabled	Activates the DSP network (TDM Out) recording.
	[0] Disable (default)[1] Enable
voip/packet_recording/tdm_recording/enabled	Activates the DSP TDM (TDM In) recording.
	[0] Disable (default)[1] Enable

7.3 Downloading a Tombstone Dump

This section shows how to download a tombstone dump using the Web interface. If a crash occurs, a crash dump file of firmware exceptions such as incorrect flow, a bug, a NULL pointer, etc., is written. The file contains data about the crashed process. IP phone developers can use it to debug a problem.

To download a tombstone using the Web interface:

 Open the Crash Dump page (Status & Diagnostics tab > Diagnostics menu > Tombstone Dump).

Crash Dur	np		
	Crash Dump		
	Total Tombstones:	0	
	Last Tombstone:	N/A	
		Download	Delete Refresh

Figure 7-1: Web Interface - Crash Dump

Table 7-3: Crash Dump Parameters

Parameter	Description
Total tombstones	The number of crashes on the phone.
Last tombstone	The date and time of the last crash (the exact time of the crash).

2. Click **Download** to save the crash dump file on your computer.

7.4 Activating Core Dump

The phone can perform a core dump providing detailed information related to a firmware exception on the phone. The core dump facilitates problem diagnosis and debugging. The recorded contents of the phone's main memory are stored at a specific time, usually after the phone crashes or is terminated abnormally, and made available for further examination.



The Core Dump feature is by default enabled on the 445HD, 450HD and C450HD phones. On all other phones, it is by default disabled.

To enable core dump:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and enable core dump using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
kernel/cfg/enable_core_dump	Enables core dump.
	[0] Disable
	 [1] Enable (default)

Table 7-4: Core Dump Parameter

If a phone issue is encountered, for example, if the phone crashes or is terminated abnormally, you can download the core dump to examine dumps of all exceptions encountered and resolve the issue.

7.5 Monitoring: Traceroute

For effective troubleshooting and diagnosis, it's recommended to set up the phone to store trace messages. This section shows how to perform traceroute using the Web interface.



During regular phone operation, it is recommended to *disable* debug tracing for improved performance.

Traceroute is a diagnostic you can use

- to display the route of packets across your network
- to measure transit delays

Traceroute computes the sum of the mean times it takes for the packets to transit each hop (from host to host) in the route. [Ping, by contrast, computes the final round-trip times from the destination point].

To perform traceroute using the Web interface:

1. Open the Monitoring page (Status & Diagnostics tab > Diagnostics menu > Monitoring).

Figure 7-2: Web Interface - Monitoring - Traceroute

Monitoring			
Traceroute			
Destination:	10.13.2.19	Go	Done
Output of 'traceroute 10.13.2.19	9':		
	(10.13.2.19), 30 hops max, 38 byte packets		
	1) 1.398 ms 1.496 ms 1.168 ms 255.7) 1.185 ms 0.529 ms 0.624 ms 9) 0.674 ms * 1.389 ms		

- 2. In the 'Destination' field, enter the IP of the device on the remote side to traceroute.
- 3. Click **Go** to perform diagnostics.

7.6 Enabling Port Mirroring

Port Mirroring when enabled changes the NIC from SWITCH to HUB (L2 to L3) so that network traffic on the LAN port is reflected in the PC port for debugging purposes.

To enable Port Mirroring:

Use the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
network/pc_port_mirroring/enabled	 Enables port mirroring. [0] Disable (default) - The LAN/PC Network interfaces operate in SWITCH mode. [1] Enable - The LAN/PC Network interfaces operate in HUB mode.

Table 7-5: Port Mirroring Parameters

8 Troubleshooting

This section provides various troubleshooting procedures.

8.1 Unable to Sign in to Skype for Business using Username/Password

Problem	Unable to sign in to Skype for Business using the username/password sign- in method.
LCD Message "Invalid address, username or password"	
Corrective Actions	
Make sure you correctly entered the sign-in address, username, and password.	

- 3. Make sure you have the correct username/password; it may have changed in the Enterprise's Active Directory.
- Make sure you used the correct sign-in method (Sign-in softkey > Switch sign-in method > OK hard key or Select softkey).

8.2 Unable to Authenticate User using PIN

Problem	Unable to authenticate user when signing in to Skype for Business using PIN code.
LCD Message	"The phone number or extension is not valid"
Corrective Actions	

Corrective Actions

- 5. Make sure you entered the phone number / PIN code correctly.
- 6. Make sure you have the correct PIN code; it may have changed in the Enterprise's Active Directory.
- Make sure you used the PIN code sign-in method (Sign-in softkey > Switch sign-in method > OK hard key or Select softkey).

8.3 IP Phone Fails Registration Process

roblem The phone fails to register.		
LCD Message -		
Corrective Actions		
Make sure:		
8. DHCP Option 43 has been configured.		
9. Access is possible from the following Web site:		
https://YOUR_AUTHORITY_SERVER:443/CertProv/CertProvisioningService.svc		
10. If the environment supports more than one CA Certificate, this must be included in the CA Certificate file and loaded to the IP phone.		

8.4 How to Verify CA Certificate is Trusted / Authorized by IP Phone

LCD Message	-
Problem	How do I know if my CA Certificate is trusted and authorized by the IP Phone?

Corrective Actions

Verify whether your public trusted certificate is listed in Microsoft Public Trusted Certificates (<u>http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/library/gg398270(v=ocs.14).aspx</u>).

8.5 Invalid Time Server

Problem	The time server is invalid.
LCD Message	-
Corrective Actions	
Make sure NTP (DHCP Option 42) is configured in the DHCP server and is defined as NTP SRV	

8.6 Invalid Time Offset

records. If not, manually configure it.

Problem The time offset is incorrect.		
LCD Message -		
Corrective Actions		
Make sure the Time Offset (DHCP Option 2) is configured in the DHCP server. If not, manually configure Daylight Saving Time (DST) values in the phone screen.		

2.

8.7 General Corrective Actions

8.7.1 Restoring Phone Defaults

The phone's default settings can be restored from its screen or from the Web interface.

8.7.1.1 Restoring Factory Defaults from the Phone Screen

This section shows how to restore factory defaults from the phone's screen.

To restore the phone's default settings from the phone screen:

- 1. Open the Restore Defaults menu option (MENU key > Administration > Restore Defaults).
 - Select the **Restore Defaults** option; the phone prompts with the following warning:
 - Warning. Restore settings?
- 3. Select **Yes** to confirm or **No** to cancel.

You can restore the phone's settings to their defaults without needing access to the 'Administration' menu or (2) administrator access to the Web interface.

To restore the phone's settings to their defaults if necessary:

- 1. Press the OK + MENU keys simultaneously and keeping them pressed, unplug the power cable.
- 2. Plug the power cable back into the phone continuing to press the OK + MENU keys for +-5 seconds.
- 3. Release the OK + MENU keys; the phone' settings are restored to their defaults.

8.7.1.2 Restoring Factory Defaults from the Web Interface

This section shows how to restore the phone's factory defaults from the Web interface.

To restore the phone's factory defaults from the Web interface:

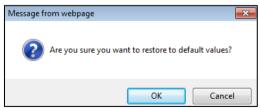
1. Open the Restore Defaults page (Management > Administration > Restore Defaults).

Figure 8-1: Web Interface - Restore Defaults

Restore Defaults			
	Restore to Factory Defaults	Submit	

2. Click Submit:

Figure 8-2: Confirm Restore to Factory Defaults



3. Click OK.

8.7.2 Loading the Configuration File Manually

This section shows how to load the cfg configuration file to the phone.

To load the cfg configuration file to the phone:

 In the Web interface, open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update menu > Configuration File):

Configuration File	
<pre>;UC_3.0.1.89.278 ems_server/keep_alive_period=60 ems_server/provisioning/url=http://10.1.8.23:8081/ ems_server/user_name=Alan Roberts kernel/cfg/enable_core_dump=1 lync/BToE/CheckNetwork=0 lync/BToE/CheckNetwork=0 lync/BToE/ServerCntControlChannelFail=1 lync/BToE/ServerCntControlChannelFail=1 lync/BToE/TcpPortNumber=9999 lync/BToE/TopPortNumber=9999 lync/BToE/TopPortNumber=9999 lync/BToE/TopPortNumber=9999 lync/BToE/TopPortNumber=9999 lync/BToE/TopPortNumber=9999 lync/BToE/TopPortNumber=9999 lync/BToE/TopPortNumber=9999 lync/BToE/TopPortNumber=9999 lync/BToE/TopPortNumber=9999 lync/BToE/TopPortNumber=00 lync/BToE/TopPortNumber=00 lync/BToE/TopPortNumber=00 lync/BToE/TopPortNumber=00 lync/BTOE/TopPortNumber=00</pre>) X:

The configuration you created is displayed in the text pane.

2. Click Loading new Configuration File:

Figure 8-4: Web Interface - Load New Configuration File

Load new Configuration File		
File Location:		Browse
		Submit

3. Click **Browse** and select the cfg file you created; the phone verifies it's related to the phone model. The cfg is then loaded to the phone. Once loaded, the phone reboots (indicated on the screen); the phone is now loaded with the cfg file you created.

8.7.3 Recovering Firmware

If the phone is powered off for some reason during the firmware upgrade process, the phone becomes unusable.

To recover the phone firmware:

- **1.** Ensure that your DHCP server supports Options 66 (TFTP server address) and 67 (firmware file), and that these are configurable.
- 2. Before connecting the phone, make sure the TFTP server is running and the firmware file for recovery is located in the correct location.



Make sure the firmware file for recovery is up to date. Make sure it's one of the latest GA firmware versions released by AudioCodes.

- 3. Connect your phone to the IP network and then connect the phone to the power outlet;
 - a. The phone sends a TFTP request to the IP address indicated in the DHCP Option 66 field to retrieve the firmware file indicated in the DHCP Option 67 field.
 - b. The phone, in the DHCP Discover message sends its model name in the DHCP Option 77 field. The DHCP server, according to the phone model, sets the appropriate firmware file name in the DHCP Option 67 field sent to the phone (e.g., 450HD_2.0.9.img).
 - c. The phone then upgrades to the recovery firmware.
 - d. After the firmware upgrade process completes, the phone boots up successfully.

See also Appendix B.

8.7.4 Restarting the Phone

The phone can be restarted from phone's screen or the Web interface.

8.7.4.1 Restarting the Phone from the Screen

This section shows how to restart the phone from its screen.

To restart the phone from its screen:

- 1. Open the Administration menu (MENU key > Administration).
- 2. Select the **Restart** option; a warning message pops up requesting you to confirm:

Warning: Restart the phone?

3. Select **Yes** to confirm phone restart or **No** to cancel.

8.7.4.2 Restarting the Phone from the Web Interface

This section shows how to restart the phone from the Web interface:

To restart the phone from the Web interface:

4. Open the Restart System page (Management tab > Administration menu > Restart System).

Figure 8-5: Web Interface - Restart System

Restart System		
Restart system	Restart	

5. Click **Restart**; you're prompted to confirm.

Figure 8-6: Confirmation Prompt

Message from webpage
Are you sure you want to restart the system?
OK Cancel

6. Click OK.

A Installing the Expansion Module

Before installing the Expansion Module for your phone, make sure the following items are included in the shipped box:

- Expansion Module
- Kit containing five screws



Applies to AudioCodes' 450HD and C450HD phones.

A.1 Installation Procedure



Before proceeding with the installation:

- Disconnect the phone from the Power Supply / Power over Ethernet (PoE)
- Obtain a Philips screwdriver

To connect the Expansion Module to the 450HD phone:

- 1. Step 1: Prepare the two units see below
- 2. Step 2: Remove the phone's side panel see below
- 3. Step 3: Connect the Expansion Module to the phone see below
- 4. Step 4: Attach the panel removed from the phone in Step 3, to the Expansion Module see below
- 5. Step 5: Secure the assembly see below
- 6. Step 6: Install the Expansion Module's base stand and the phone's base stand see below
- 7. Step 7: Mount the assembled unit see below

A.1.1 Step 1: Place Phone and Module on a Table

Place the phone and the Expansion Module on a table alongside one other.



A.1.2 Step 2: Invert and Unscrew Three Screws

Invert the phone on a surface that won't scratch the screen such as a towel or printer paper. Avoid inverting the phone on the surface of a desk. Then unscrew the three screws shown below in order to remove the phone's side panel:



A.1.3 Step 3: Remove Rubber Cover and Connect

Return the phone to an upright position. Remove the Expansion Module's connector's rubber cover and then connect the Expansion Module to the phone. Note the connector and PEM direction.



A.1.4 Step 4: Attach the Panel

Attach the panel that you removed from the phone in Step 3 to the side of the Expansion Module:



A.1.5 Step 5: Secure the Side Panel

Invert the assembled unit and secure the side panel by screwing in the three screws:



A.1.6 Step 6: Secure the Connection of the Two Units

[Refer again to the figure above] Secure the connection of the two units by screwing in these five screws.

A.1.7 Step 7: Mount Phone on Base Stand, Expansion Module on Base Stand

With the assembly inverted, mount the phone on its dedicated base stand and the Expansion Module on its dedicated base stand, like this:



Slots in the stands are slid onto rails on the units. The figure above shows the phone

mounted on the short edge of its 'L' shaped base stand, and the Expansion Module mounted on the short edge of its 'L' shaped base stand. The long edge of the 'L' can alternatively be used per user preference, depending on sources of glare in the office.

B Alternative Automatic Provisioning Methods

B.1 Static DNS Record Method

The Static DNS (Generic Domain Name) Record method is used for automatic provisioning when you are unable to manage your DHCP server. If the provisioning server does not support using SIP SUBSCRIBE and NOTIFY messages mechanism as described above and no response for the SIP SUBSCRIBE message has been received, the phone tries to retrieve firmware and configuration files using the following URL: tftp://ProvisioningServer/<Phone Model Name>/

For example:

- The phone tries to obtain the following firmware file: tftp://ProvisioningServer/450HD/450HD.img
- The phone tries to obtain the following configuration file: tftp://ProvisioningServer/450HD/<MAC address>.cfg
 - (e.g. tftp://ProvisioningServer/450HD/001122334455.cfg)

It is the Administrator's responsibility to configure a DNS entry called **ProvisioningServer** on the DNS server and set it to the TFTP server IP address.



If Generic Domain Name is used, the automatic provisioning mechanism periodically tries to retrieve new firmware/configuration from Provisioning Server domain name.

To configure Static DNS Record:

Open the Configuration File page (Management tab > Manual Update > Configuration File) and configure the parameters using the table below as reference.

Parameter	Description
provisioning/firmware/url]	The static URL for checking the firmware file. The URL must be entered using one of the following syntax options:
	 <protocol>://<server address="" host="" ip="" name="" or=""></server></protocol> <protocol>://<server address="" host="" ip="" name="" or="">/<firmware file="" name=""></firmware></server></protocol>
	Where <protocol> can be one of the following protocols: "ftp", "tftp", "http" or "https". For example:</protocol>
	 tftp://192.168.2.1 – retrieved firmware file is 450HD.img ftp://192.168.2.1/Different_Firmware_Name.img - retrieved firmware file is Different_Firmware_Name.img
	Note: This parameter is applicable only when method is configured to "Static".
provisioning/configuration/url]	The static URL for checking the configuration file. The URL must be entered using one of the following syntax options:
	 <protocol>://<server address="" host="" ip="" name="" or=""></server></protocol> <protocol>://<server address="" host="" ip="" name="" or="">/<configuration file="" name=""></configuration></server></protocol>
	Where <protocol> can be "ftp", "tftp", "http" or "https" and where <configuration file="" name=""> can be either:</configuration></protocol>
	 A unique configuration file, per phone, for example: <mac>.cfg -or-</mac>
	 A global configuration file, per deployment, for example, 450HD.cfg
	Unique Configuration Example
	http://192.168.2.1/different.img; <mac>.cfg</mac>
	The retrieved firmware file is <i>different.img</i> and the configuration file name is <i><mac>.cfg</mac></i> such as <i>001122334455.cfg</i>
	Global Configuration Example
	http://192.168.2.1/<450HD>.cfg
	The configuration file name is 450HD.cfg
	Note: This parameter is applicable only when 'Method' is configured to Static .

Table B-1: Static DNS Record Parameters

B.2 AudioCodes' HTTPS Redirect Server

AudioCodes' HTTPS redirect server can be used to direct phones to the provisioning server's URL, for downloading configuration and firmware files.

After the phone is powered up and network connectivity is established, the phone automatically requests provisioning information. If it doesn't get it according to the regular provisioning methods, it sends an HTTPS request to AudioCodes' HTTPS redirect server. The server responds to the phone with an HTTPS Redirect response containing the URL of the provisioning server where the firmware and configuration files are located. When the phone successfully connects to the provisioning server's URL, an Automatic Update mechanism begins.

Phones' MAC addresses and the provisioning server's URL are preconfigured on the HTTPS redirect server. For more information, contact AudioCodes support.

AudioCodes' HTTPS redirect server's default URL is: provisioning/redirect_server_url=https://redirect.audiocodes.com This address can be reconfigured if required.

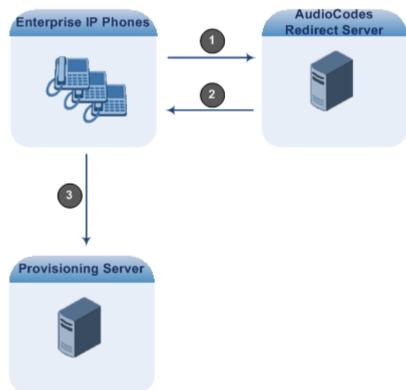


Figure A-7: HTTPS Redirect Server Directing Phones to Provisioning Server

B.2.1.1 Redirection Process

Here's how redirection is performed (refer to Figure A-2):

The phone sends an HTTPS request to the redirect server.



(1)

The redirect server sends an HTTPS response with the provisioning server's URL. The phone sends a request for cfg and img files to the provisioning server.

Communications between the phone and the redirect server are encrypted (HTTPS) for security reasons. The phone uses the pre-installed AudioCodes factory-set certificate to authenticate itself with the redirect server and to verify the latter's authenticity. If the redirect URL (where the cfg file is located) also uses HTTPS protocol, the phone can use a regular certificate - or the AudioCodes factory-set certificate - to authenticate itself and to validate the server's certificate if a trusted root certificate (regular) is configured.



The phone repeats the redirect process whenever reset to factory defaults.

C Recovering AudioCodes' IP Phone

This appendix shows how to recover AudioCodes' IP phone.

To recover the phone, follow this procedure:

- 1. Identify that the phone is in recovery mode (see below)
- 2. Recover the phone (see below)
- 3. Make sure the phone downloaded the image file (see below)

C.1 Identifying that the Phone is in Recovery Mode

This section shows how to identify that the phone is in recovery mode.

To identify that the phone is in recovery mode:

• Observe the following displayed in the phone's screen:

Figure B-1: Identifying Recovery Mode



-OR-

• Observe that the phone reboots every +-5 seconds.

C.2 Making Sure the Phone is in Recovery Mode

You can make sure that the phone is in recovery mode.

To make sure the phone is in recovery mode:

- **1.** Connect the phone to the PC and run WireShark.
- In WireShark, filter by **bootp** and then check if the phone is requesting Option 66 (TFTP Server) & Option 67 (Bootfile) under Option 55 in the 'DHCP Discover' message, as shown in the figures below.

Figure B-2: Verifying Recovery Mode in Wireshark

	Edit	View	Go	Capture	Analyz	e <u>S</u> tatis	tics T	elephony	<u>I</u> ool	Internals	<u>H</u> elp							
0	•		é		8	2 9	. 🔶 I	-	T 2		0	QC	2 🖻] 6		1 🐔	X	
Filte	r: boo	tp								💌 Expr	ession	Clear	Appl	y Sa	ve			
Vo.	Tim			Source		Des	tination	P	rotocol	Length I								
	2000	20175	-	0.0.0		1/1 100		. 255. D				- 1010 - 1010				-		0x904889
		20893		192.3	168.4.			. 5. 32 0				offer			1000	-		0x904889 0x914889
		20471 21546			168.4.			. 255. D				offer						0x914889
		81604		0.0.0				. 255. 0				2010022						0x904889
		82174			168.4.					400	DHCP	ffer	-	Tra	nsac	tion	ID	0x904889
([:				III														
8	Opt	ion	(53) DI	HCP M	essag	е ту	pe (D	isco	ver)								
8	Opt	ion	(51) C	lient	iden	tifi	er										
9	Opt	ion	C	L2) HO	ost N	ame												
8	Opt	ion	(50) Ve	endor	clas	s id	entif	ier									
8	Opt	tion	C	77) U	ser C	lass	Info	rmati	on									
E	Opt	ion	(55) Pa	ar ame	ter R	eque	st Li	st									
	1	engt	:h:	13			1											
	F	aran	net	er Red	quest	List	Ite	m: (1) Su	bnet M	ask							
				er Red														
					*				C	main N	ame	serve	r					
									-	ost Na								
								10000		omain								
										roadca		ddres	C.					
										FTP Se								
										ootfil								
													uri	tw	cor	vor	TP	[TODO]
										PXE -								
												med	(V	end	01	spec	.11	
										Unassi								
		arar	nete	er Re(quest	LIST	Ite	m: (1		Unassi								
							-		015	Unassi								

3. Make sure the source Ethernet MAC address is the same as that labeled on the base of the phone. For example:

Figure B-3: Source Ethernet MAC Address in Wireshark Identical to Phone Base's



C.3 Recovering the Phone

This section shows how to recover the phone.

To recover the phone:

- 1. Configure the PC NIC to which the phone is connected as follows:
 - IP address: **192.168.1.1**
 - Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0
 - Figure B-4 below shows the configured settings.
- 2. Make sure the phone is directly connected (or via a network hub) to the PC LAN NIC.
- 3. Disable all other PC NICs (also wireless NICs).

Figure B-4: Recovering the Phone - Configure the PC NIC to which the Phone is Connected

I	nternet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4) Properties
ſ	General
	You can get IP settings assigned automatically if your network supports this capability. Otherwise, you need to ask your network administrator for the appropriate IP settings.
ł.	O <u>O</u> btain an IP address automatically
L	O Use the following IP address:
	IP address: 192 . 168 . 1 . 1
	Subnet mask: 255 . 255 . 255 . 0
	Default gateway:
l	Obtain DNS server address automatically
L	O Use the following DNS server addresses:
L	Preferred DNS server:
	Alternate DNS server:
	Validate settings upon exit
	OK Cancel

- 4. Download the following **tftpd64** freeware tool: <u>http://tftpd32.jounin.net/tftpd32_download.html</u>
- 5. Run the tftpd64.exe executable.
- 6. Click Settings and configure the following settings:

Table C-1: Configuring tftpd64 Settings

Global				
TFTP Server	Browse to the directory in which the	IP pool start address:		
[=option66]	AudioCodes IP phone firmware is located.	192.168.1.2		
Syslog Server	Bind the TFTP to IP address 192.168.1.1	Size of pool: 5		
DHCP Server	Leave all other options at their default.	Lease: 3		
		Default.router: 192.168.1.1		
		Mask: 255.255.255.0		
		Additional Option: 67,		
		FW_file_name.img		

🏘 Tftpd64: Settings	Tftpd64: Settings
GLOBAL TFTP DHCP SYSLOG	GLOBAL TFTP DHCP SYSLOG
Start Services TFTP Server TFTP Client SNTP server Syslog Server DHCP Server DNC Server Enable IPv6	Base Directory C:\http_tftp IFTP Security IFTP Security IFTP Security IFTP Security IFTP Configuration Image: Standard Image: Standard
OK Default Help Cancel	OK Default Help Cancel
Image: Construct of the sector of the sec	2 1 55.0 2.2.8.49 img

7. For tftps64 to accept the new settings, close and open tftpd64.

After (1) **tftpd64** is restarted, (2) the phone is directly connected to the PC, and (3) the network settings referred to above are applied, the phone immediately gets the required options [**66** and **67**] and begins downloading the firmware. Make sure the phone is downloading the image file as shown in the next section.

C.4 Make Sure the Phone is Downloading the Image File

This section shows how to make sure the phone is downloading the firmware image file.

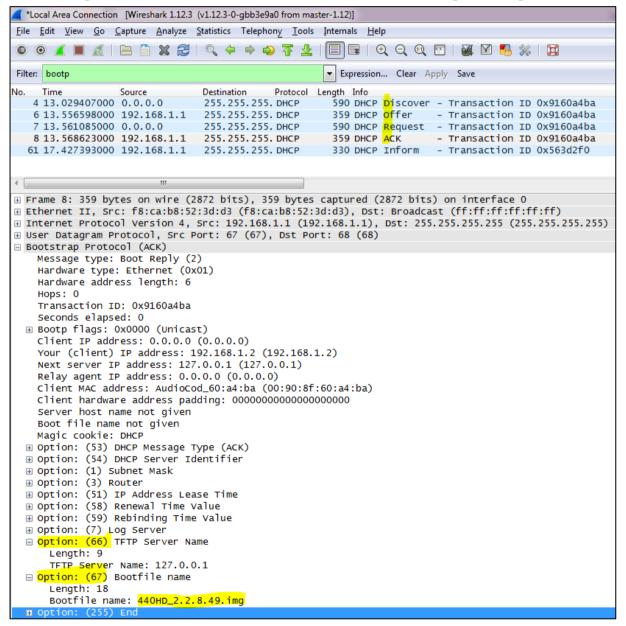
To make sure the phone is downloading the image file:

- use Wireshark -or-
- use tftpd64 -or-
- use the phone screen

C.4.1 Making Sure Using Wireshark

1. In Wireshark, make sure the four DHCP 'DORA' (Discover; Offer; Request; ACK) steps are accomplished, as shown in the figure below.

Figure B-5: Make Sure with Wireshark that the Phone is Downloading Phone .img File



2. Filter by **TFTP**, as shown in the figure below.

	F 111		-				-		-		•. • •••					
<u>F</u> ile	<u>E</u> dit	View	<u>G</u> o <u>(</u>	<u>apture</u>	<u>A</u> nalyze	Statisti	cs le	lephor	<u>у I</u>	ools	<u>I</u> nternals <u>H</u> elp					
0	0_/				* 2	Q	(۵	T	⊉		ର୍ ପ୍ 🖭	¥ 🗹	R 3	% 🔀	
Filter	tftp										Expression	Clear Apply S	ave			
No.	Time			Source		Desti	nation		Protoc	col l	Length Info	ackee, brock				
40013	23			192.1	68.1.2	192	168	1.1	TETP			ledgement, B			7	
					68.1.1			1.2				acket, Block				
					68.1.2			1.1				ledgement, B			B	
					68.1.1			1.2				acket, Block			-	
					68.1.2			1.1				ledgement, B			9	
					68.1.1			1.2				acket, Block				
					68.1.2			1.1				ledgement, B			D	
					68.1.1	192	.168.	1.2	TETP	•		acket, Block				
40021	23.	86390	9000	192.1	68.1.2	192	.168.	1.1	TETP		60 Acknow	ledgement, B	lock:	19951	1	
40022	23.	86402	20000	192.1	68.1.1	192	.168.	1.2	TETP	,	558 Data P	acket, Block	: 1995	2		
40023	23.	86494	18000	192.1	68.1.2	192	.168.	1.1	TETP		60 Acknow	ledgement, B	lock:	19952	2	
40024	23.	86508	34000	192.1	68.1.1	192	.168.	1.2	TETP	•	558 Data P	acket, Block	: 1995	3		
40025	23.	86747	7000	192.1	68.1.2	192	.168.	1.1	TETP	2	60 Acknow	ledgement, B	lock:	19953	3	
40026	23.	86764	0000	192.1	68.1.1	192	.168.	1.2	TETP	, ,	558 Data P	acket, Block	: 1995	4		
40027	23.	86832	2000	192.1	68.1.2	192	.168.	1.1	TETP	1	60 Acknow	ledgement, B	lock:	19954	4	
40028	23.	86846	53000	192.1	68.1.1	192	.168.	1.2	TETP	•	558 Data P	acket, Block	: 1995	5		
40029	23.	8691	59000	192.1	68.1.2	192	.168.	1.1	TFTP	•	60 Acknow	ledgement, B	lock:	19955	5	
					68.1.1	192	.168.	1.2	TFTP	•		acket, Block				
40031	23.	87000	9000	192.1	68.1.2	192	.168.	1.1	TETP	2	60 Acknow	ledgement, B	lock:	19956	5	
40032	23.	87023	35000	192.1	68.1.1	192	.168.	1.2	TETP	>		acket, Block				
40033	23.	87089	98000	192.1	68.1.2	192	.168.	1.1	TFTP	2		ledgement, B				
40034	23.	87104	0000	192.1	68.1.1	192	.168.	1.2	TFTP	·		acket, Block				
40035	23.	87144	2000	192.1	68.1.2	192	.168.	1.1	TFTP	2	60 Acknow	ledgement, B	lock:	19958	8	
•			III													
⊕ Fr	ame 4	40026	5: 558	8 byte	s on wi	re (44	164 b	its)	, 55	8 by	tes captured	(4464 bits)	on in	terf	ace 0	
🗄 Et	hern	et II	t, sro	:: f8:0	a:b8:5	2:3d:c	13 (f	8:ca	:b8:	52:3	d:d3), Dst:	AudioCod_60:	a4:ba	(00:	90:8f:6	i0:a4:ba
🗄 In	tern	et Pr	otoco	ol vers	sion 4,	Src:	192.	168.1	1.1	(192	.168.1.1), 0	st: 192.168.	1.2 (1	.92.1	68.1.2)	
± Us	er D	atagr	am Pr	otoco	l, Src	Port:	5352	0 (5	3520), D	st Port: 200	0 (2000)				
🖃 Tr	ivia	1 Fi	le Tra	ansfer	Protoc	0]										
					_2.2.8.4	49.img	3]									
				acket	(3)											
		k: 19														
+ Da	ta (512 k	ytes))												

Figure B-6: Verifying .img File Download with Wireshark – Filtering by TFTP

C.4.2 Making Sure Using tftpd64

In tftpd64, view the indications shown in the figures below.

Figure B-7: Verifying .img File Download using tftpd64

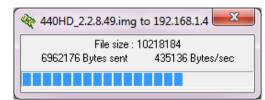


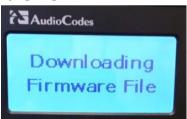
Figure B-8: Verifying .img File Download using tftpd64

🏘 Tftpd64 by Ph	Jounin				
Current Directory	C:\http_tftp			•	Browse
Server interfaces	127.0.0.1	Software Loopbac	k Interface 1	-	Show <u>D</u> ir
Tftp Server DH0	CP server Syslog se	rver Log viewer			
DHCP: proposed Revd DHCP Rgst Previously allocatk Revd DHCP infor Revd DHCP Disc DHCP: proposed Revd DHCP Rgst Previously allocatk Revd DHCP infor Revd DHCP Disc	address 192.168.1.4 Msg for IP 0.0.0.0, M ad address 192.168.1 n Msg for IP 192.168. over Msg for IP 0.0.0, address 192.168.1.4 Msg for IP 0.0.0, M ad address 192.168.1 n Msg for IP 192.168. over Msg for IP 0.0.0, address 192.168.1.4	0, Mac 00:90:8F:60:A4:B [26/04 16:30:02.593] ac 00:90:8F:60:A4:BA [2 .4 acked [26/04 16:30:02	6/04 16:29:37.291] 7.291] 5:D3 [26/04 16:29:40.820] A [26/04 16:30:02.093] 6/04 16:30:02.603] 2.603] 5:D3 [26/04 16:30:05.813]		E
<u>About</u>			<u>S</u> ettings		<u>H</u> elp

C.4.3 Making Sure Using the Phone Screen

In tftpd64, view the indications shown in the figures below.

Figure B-9: Verifying .img File Download from the Phone Screen





Important: Do not unplug / power-off the phone while the screen displays the message shown below.



You can disconnect the phone from the PC and connect to the network LAN *only after the firmware upgrade finishes*, that is, after the phone's screen displays the following:

Discovering CDP...Discovering LLDP...Acquiring IP...

The phone is now up, functioning, and ready to be provisioned.

D Huddle Room Solution (HRS)

This appendix describes Web interface parameters and functionalities that are unique to the HRS. *Note that the HRS does not support BToE, paging* and *Boss Admin (though Delegates is supported).* In the System Information page shown below, parameters 'Speaker Model Name' and 'Speaker Firmware Version' apply only to the HRS Web interface.

Figure C-10: System Information page

System Info	rmation	
	Model Name	UC-HRS-457
	Firmware Version	UC_3.0.2.141.3
	Release Date	2017-11-06_19:50:53
	Speaker Model Name	HRS_457
	Speaker Firmware Version	110

These parameters are not displayed in the Web interface of the other phones. The first refers to the Jabra speaker model name. The second to its firmware version.

In the Release Information page shown below, parameters 'Conference Speaker Device type' and 'Conference Speaker Device FW version' apply only to the HRS Web interface.

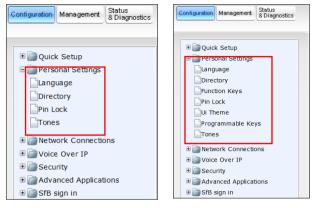
Release Inform	ation	
	BLVERSION	1.0.33
	BUILD_TIME	2017-11-06_19:50:53
	DSPFWVERSION	494E002ce2.720.32
	HW_TYPE	UC-HRS-457
	LOG	0
	SWVERSION	UC_3.0.2.141.3
	SW_TYPE	LYNC
	Conference Speaker Device type	HRS_457
	Conference Speaker Device FW version	110

Figure C-11: Release Information page

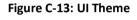
These parameters are not displayed in the Web interface of the other phones. The first refers to the Jabra speaker type. The second refers to the Jabra speaker firmware version.

In the navigation tree under the Configuration tab, Personal Settings shown below, the HRS does not display Function Keys, UI Theme and Programmable Keys.

Figure C-12: Personal Settings (Left HRS | Right 450HD and C450HD)



The HRS' UI Theme can be changed in the Web interface. You can select MSFT (Microsoft) or AudioCodes.





E Migrating from Skype for Business to Teams Environment

Read this appendix when migrating from Microsoft Skype for Business to Microsoft Teams. AudioCodes phones are Teams compatible and will continue operating as normal after migration. Users currently using **Exchange Username and Password** to sign in to their phones should not have issues due to this migration. Users using **Pin Code and Extension**, however, need to change their sign-in method and start using **Exchange Username and Password**. This appendix provides step-bystep instructions on how to sign in to your phone using the **Web Sign-in (Cloud)** method.

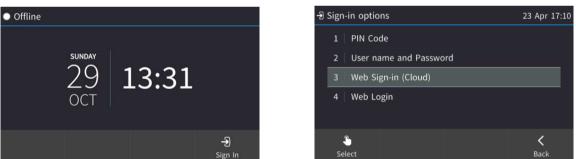
Important:

- After completing the migration procedure, your phone may lose its registration with the server and may require that you sign out before signing in through **Web Sign-in**. If this occurs, see <u>here</u> for instructions on how to sign out before signing in again.
- In addition, your phone may attempt to sign in repeatedly. If this occurs, use the **Cancel** softkey to cancel the sign-in attempts, and then proceed to sign in to the phone.

E.1 Signing in with Web Sign-in (Cloud)

Signing in to your phone using the **Web Sign-in (Cloud)** option enables connectivity to Microsoft's Cloud PBX, which is Microsoft's cloud-hosted version for enterprise voice.

To sign in with the Web Sign-in (Cloud) option:



1. On your phone, select the Web Sign-in (Cloud) option:

2. View in the phone screen a Web URL and Pairing Code that's displayed:

ງ Web Sign-in (Clou	ıd): Timeout 14:57	23 Apr 17:11
WEB URL: Pairing Code:	http://aka.ms/sphone d8x97ay6a	
		X Cancel

- 3. Using a standard web browser, go to Microsoft's Cloud PBX login page at http://aka.ms/sphone (i.e., URL displayed on your phone's LCD).
- 4. Enter the Pairing Code (as displayed on your phone's LCD):

Sign in to your account 🗙 -	÷	- 🗆 X
← → C ☆ 🔒 login.microsoft	online.com/common/oauth2/deviceauth	☆ М :
		»
And the second sec	Microsoft	
and the second second	Enter code	
	Enter the code displayed on your app or device.	
A contraction	D8X97AY6A	
ASTA CARAGE LAN	Next	
		Terms of use Privacy & cookies ····

5. Click **Next**; the following screen appears:

Pick	an account	
Busine Select I	I be signed in to AudioCodes Sk ss IP Phones on a remote device Back if you aren't trying to sign in tion on a remote device or service	e or service. In to this
Å	Yaniv Kitlaru YanivK⊕audiocodes.com Signed in	:
1	Use another account	
+		

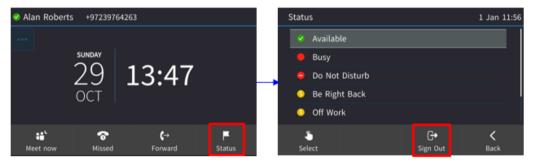
6. Select your account name; the following message appears, indicating that you have successfully signed in:



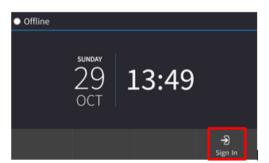
E.2 Signing Out and then Signing In Again

If your computer's password was changed, sign-out of your phone and then sign in again as follows:

- 1. In the idle screen, touch the **Status** softkey.
- 2. In the Status screen, touch the **Sign Out** softkey.
- 3. In the idle screen (Offline), touch the **Sign In** softkey to sign in.



You're signed out and returned to the offline screen displaying the Sign in softkey.



F Switching Devices from Teams Compatible to Teams Native Mode

This appendix shows how to configure a provisioning template and upload software files on the AudioCodes Device Manager or OVOC to switch devices from Teams Compatible to Teams Native mode.

F.1 Prerequisites

- Device Manager or OVOC installed on the management server
- Teams Compatible firmware file: *UCC450HD_3.4.5.2.img* or later
- Teams Native firmware file: C450HD_TEAMS_1.8.288.android_images.zip or later
- Teams native .md5 file: C450HD_TEAMS_1.8.288.android_images.zip.md5

F.2 Upload Software Files to the Device Manager

F.2.1 Enable MD5 File Uploading to the Device Manager

- 1. In the Device Manager, go to **Setup** > **System Settings**.
- 2. In the System Settings page, go to Upload File Extensions.
- 3. Add .md5 to the 'Accept Extensions' field and click Save.

2	🕹 Upload File Extensions						
	Accept Extensions	.cab,.cfg,.csv,.id,.img,.md5,.zip	Note: Use ' , ' as delimeter of the extensions ('.cfg,.img,.zip').	Save			

F.2.2 Upload Teams Compatible Firmware File

- 1. Upload the file *UCC450HD_3.4.5.2.img* to the Device Manager.
- 2. Go to Setup > Devices Configuration > Firmware Files.
- 3. Click Add new device firmware

CC audiocodes	≡ <mark></mark>	TUP MONITOR TROUBLESHOOT	🥸 🛛 Device Manage	er Express		A ⁷⁰ ∖admin → 🛛 🕫	
GENERATE CONFIGURATION						NETWORK TOP	
Zero Touch Setup	_ <u>i</u> ≡	Phone firmware files					
Users & Devices	2 + Add new Device						
Devices Configuration		Name	Description	Version	File Name	Tenant	
Templates Zero Touch Mapping	1	420HD	420HD - default firmware	3.0.1.276	420HD.lmg	🕼 Edit 🗐 Delete	
System Settings Polycom Configuration	2	430HD	430HD - default firmware	3.0.1.276	430HD.img	🕼 Edit 🖻 Delete	
DHCP Options Configuration	3	445HD	445HD - default firmware		445HD.img	C Edit 🗐 Delete	
Template Placeholders Tenant Configuration	4	HRS	HRS - default firmware	HRS	HRS.img	🕼 Edit 🛱 Delete	
Generated Configuration 1	5	450HD	450HD - default firmware	UC450HD_3.0.1.89.367	450HD.img	🕼 Edit 🖻 Delete	
Firmware Files	6	C448HD	C448HD - default firmware		C448HD.img	🕼 Edit 🗐 Delete	
Latest Firmware Versions	7	UC-HRS-458	UC-HRS-458	1.3.6	458_0103.img	C Edit 🖻 Delete	
Import / Export	8	UC-HRS-457	UC-HRS-457	1.10.0	457_0110.img	🕼 Edit 🗐 Delete	
System		PX50	PY50 - default firmware		DY50 img	C Edit Delete	

- 4. Enter Name, Description, Version (without suffix .img) and Tenant.
- 5. Click Continue & Upload.

+ Add new Device firmware	
Name:	
UCC450HD_3.4.5.2	
Description:	
UCC450HD_3.4.5.2	
Version:	
UCC450HD_3.4.5.2	
Tenant:	
Default	~
ᆂ Continue & Upload 🕒 B	ack

6. Click Upload firmware file:

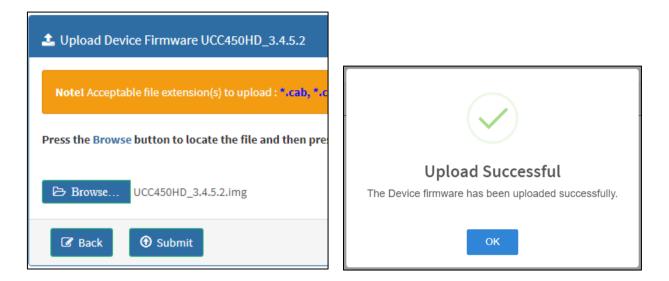
F. Switching Devices from Teams Compatible to Teams Native Mode

UCC450HD_3.4.5.2	
Description:	
UCC450HD_3.4.5.2	
Version:	
UCC450HD_3.4.5.2	
Tenant:	
Default	~

7. Browse to the file *UCC450HD_3.4.5.2.img*:

Upload Device Firmware UCC450HD_3.4.5.2					
NoteI Acceptable file extension(s) to upload : *.cab, *.cfg, *					
Press the Browse button to locate the file and then press th					
Browse No file chosen					
🕼 Back					

8. Click Submit:



F.2.3 Upload Teams Native Firmware

- 1. Upload file C450HD_TEAMS_1.8.288.android_images.zip to the Device Manager.
- 2. Repeat the steps shown in the previous section for the file *C450HD_TEAMS_1.8.288.android_images.zip.*

F.2.4 Upload MD5 File

- 1. Upload the file C450HD_TEAMS_1.8.288.android_images.zip.md5 to the Device Manager.
- 2. Repeat the steps shown in the section before the previous for the file *C450HD_TEAMS_1.8.288.android_images.zip.md5.*

F.2.5 Verify Files Successful Upload

Check the phone's firmware files to make sure all files were uploaded with the correct name and extension.

31	C450HD_TEAMS_1.8.288.android_images.zip	C450HD_TEAMS_1.8.288md5	C450HD_TEAMS_1.8.288.android_images.zip	C450HD_TEAMS_1.8.288.android_images.zip.md5		Default	C Edit	🛢 Delete
32	C450HD_TEAMS_1.8.288.android_images	C450HD_TEAMS_1.8.288.android_images	C450HD_TEAMS_1.8.288.android_images.zip		Default	🕼 Edit	🛢 Delete	
33	UCC450HD_3.4.5.2	4.5.2 UCC450HD_3.4.5.2 C450HDUC_3.4.5.2				Default	🕼 Edit	🛢 Delete
(C450HD_TEAMS_1.8.288	Default	C Edit		🕽 Del	ete		
C450HD_TEAMS_1.8.288.android_images.zip				Default	🕼 Edit		🗊 Del	ete
l	JCC450HD_3.4.5.2.img	Default	🕼 Edit		🕽 Del	ete		

F.3 Add Parameters to Provision in the Teams Phone Template

- 1. Go to Setup > Devices Configuration > Templates.
- 2. Edit the Teams IP-Phone template.
- 3. Add the parameters below to the template:

```
provisioning/AndroidUpdate/FirmwareUrl=https://<DM IP
address>/<firmware
folder>/C450HD_TEAMS_1.8.288.android_images.zip
provisioning/AndroidUpdate/AutomaticSwitchToTeams=1
```

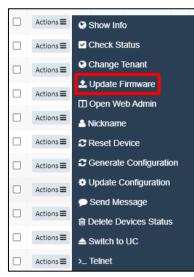
4. Click Save.

Example:

Edit template	
< <u>file_config</u> > <type>file</type> <profile>user</profile> < <u>sencrypt_mode></u> < <u>name>%iTCS_mac%c.fg</u> < <u>destinationDir=%iTCS_destinationW</u> < <u>destinationDir=%iTCS_destinationW</u> < <u>data><i[cdat4[include_audiocodes_c450hd_global_lync_empty.cfg< u=""> management/tenet/enabled=1</i[cdat4[include_audiocodes_c450hd_global_lync_empty.cfg<></u>	
provisioning/AndroidUpdate/FirmwareUrI=https://10.59.160.109/ipp_files/firmware/C450HD_TEAMS_1.8.288.android_images.zip provisioning/AndroidUpdate/AutomaticSvitchToTeams=1 ems_setver/Keep_alive_period=1 provisioning/configuration/url=%iTCS_HTTP_OR_S%://%ITCS_ServerIP%/configfiles/ provisioning/period/hourl/hours_interval=24 provisioning/period/woetkly/day=SUNDAY provisioning/period/weetkly/day=SUNDAY provisioning/reiod/weetkly/day=SUNDAY provisioning/reiod/meetkly/time=0.00 provisioning/reiod/weetkly/time=120 provisioning/reiod/weetkly/time=120 provisioning/reiod/weetkly/time=120 provisioning/reiod/weetkly/time=120 provisioning/reiod/weetkly/time=0.00 ems_setver/user_password=%ITCS_Line1AuthName% ems_setver/user_password=%ITCS_Line1AuthName% ems_setver/user_password=%ITCS_Line1AuthName% ems_setver/user_password=%ITCS_Line1AuthName% ems_setver/user_password=%ITCS_Line1AuthName% ems_setver/user_password=%ITCS_Line1AuthName% ems_setver/user_password=%ITCS_Line1AuthName% ems_setver/user_password=%ITCS_Line1AuthName% ems_setver/user/isoning/url=%ITCS_HTTP_OR_S%://%ITCS_HTTP_PROXY_IP%:%ITCS_HTTP_PROXY_PORT%/ipprest/lync_auto_prov.php network/lag/vlag/id=%ITCS_VLANID% network/lag/vlag/id=%ITCS_VLANID% network/lag/vlag/id=%ITCS_VLANID%	
Save Cancel	

F.4 Upgrade the Phone to Teams Compatible Transition Firmware

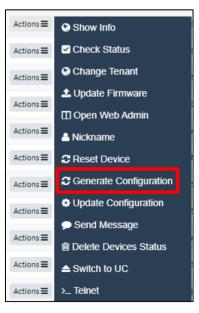
- **1.** Go to Monitor > Device Status.
- Upgrade the phone to firmware version UCC450HD_3.4.5.2 (or later) by clicking Actions
 Update Firmware.



F.5 Generate Configuration on the Phone

1. After the phone completes the upgrade to UCC450HD_3.4.5.2 (or higher), set the switching provision by clicking Actions > Generate Configuration.

The phone then updates the configuration, reboots and starts the switching process to Teams Native.



F.6 Verify Successful Upgrade to Teams Native

After the phone finishes switching and upgrading to Teams Native, check that it's connected to the Device Manager/OVOC and that the firmware matches.

Model	•	Firmware	-	Tenant	•	Template 🔹	Report Time
🗙 🚺 C450HD		TEAMS_1.8.288		Default			2020.11.26 08:39:10

G Specifications

See AudioCodes' 400HD IP Phone Series Release Notes for detailed information about the phones' specifications.

G.1 SIP Support (RFC, Headers)

The following is a list of supported SIP RFCs and methods that you can use to create for the phone.

RFC Number	RFC Title		
RFC 2327	SDP		
RFC 2617	HTTP Authentication: Basic and Digest Access Authentication		
RFC 2782	A DNS RR for specifying the location of services		
RFC 2833	Telephone event		
RFC 3261	SIP		
RFC 3262	Reliability of Provisional Responses in SIP		
RFC 3263	Locating SIP Servers		
RFC 3264	Offer/Answer Model		
RFC 3265	(SIP)-Specific Event Notification		
RFC 3310	Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) Digest Authentication Using Authentication and Key Agreement (AKA)		
RFC 3326 (Partially Supported)	Reason header		
RFC 3389	RTP Payload for Comfort Noise		
RFC 3515	Refer Method		
RFC 3605	RTCP attribute in SDP		
RFC 3611	RTP Control Protocol Extended Reports (RTCP XR)		
RFC 3665	SIP Basic Call Flow Examples		
RFC 3711	The Secure Real-time Transport Protocol (SRTP)		
RFC 3725	Third Party Call Control		
RFC 3842	MWI		
RFC 3891	"Replaces" Header		
RFC 3892 (Sections 2.1-2.3 and 3 are supported)	The SIP Referred-By Mechanism		
RFC 3960 (Partially Supported)	Early Media and Ringing Tone Generation in SIP (partial compliance)		
RFC 3966	The tel URI for Telephone Numbers		
RFC 4028 (Partially Supported)	Session Timers in the Session Initiation Protocol		
RFC 4240	Basic Network Media Services with SIP - NetAnn		

Table	G-1:	Supporte	d IFTF	RFCs
Table	O-T.	Jupporter		111 C3

RFC Number	RFC Title
draft-ietf-sip-privacy-04.txt (Partially Supported)	SIP Extensions for Network-Asserted Caller Identity using Remote-Party-ID header
draft-ietf-sipping-cc-transfer-05	Call Transfer
draft-ietf-sipping-realtimefax-01	SIP Support for Real-time Fax: Call Flow Examples
draft-choudhuri-sip-info-digit-00	SIP INFO method for DTMF digit transport and collection
draft-mahy-sipping-signaled-digits-01	Signaled Telephony Events in the Session Initiation Protocol

The following SIP features are not supported:

- Preconditions (RFC 3312)
 - SDP Simple Capability Declaration (RFC 3407)
 - S/MIME

i

- Outbound, Managing Client-Initiated Connections (RFC 5626)
- SNMP SIP MIB (RFC 4780)
- SIP Compression RFC 5049 (SigComp)
- ICE (RFC 5245)
- Connected Identity (RFC 4474)

G.1.1 SIP Compliance Tables

The SIP device complies with RFC 3261 as shown in the following subsections.

G.1.1.1 SIP Methods

The device supports the following SIP methods:

Method	Supported	Comments
INVITE	Yes	
АСК	Yes	
BYE	Yes	
CANCEL	Yes	
REGISTER	Yes	Send only
REFER	Yes	Inside and outside of a dialog
NOTIFY	Yes	
INFO	Yes	
OPTIONS	Yes	
PRACK	Yes	
PUBLISH	Yes	Send only
SUBSCRIBE	Yes	

G.1.1.2 SIP Headers

The device supports the following SIP headers:

Table G-3: Supported SIP Headers

Header Field	Supported
Accept	Yes
Alert-Info	Yes
Allow	Yes
Authorization	Yes
Call-ID	Yes
Call-Info	Yes
Contact	Yes
Content-Length	Yes
Content-Type	Yes
Cseq	Yes
Date	Yes

Header Field	Supported
Diversion	Yes
Encryption	No
Expires	Yes
Fax	Yes
From	Yes
History-Info	Yes
Join	Yes
Max-Forwards	Yes
MIN-SE	Yes
P-Asserted-Identity	Yes
P-Preferred-Identity	Yes
Proxy- Authenticate	Yes
Proxy- Authorization	Yes
Prack	Yes
Record- Route	Yes
Refer-To	Yes
Referred-By	Yes
Replaces	Yes
Remote-Party-ID	Yes
Retry-After	Yes
Route	Yes
Session-Expires	Yes
Supported	Yes
Timestamp	Yes
То	Yes
Unsupported	Yes
User- Agent	Yes
Via	Yes
Voicemail	Yes
Warning	Yes
WWW- Authenticate	Yes

International Headquarters 1 Hayarden Street,

Airport City Lod 7019900, Israel Tel: +972-3-976-4000 Fax: +972-3-976-4040 **AudioCodes Inc.** 200 Cottontail Lane Suite A101E Somerset, NJ 08873 Tel: +1-732-469-0880 Fax: +1-732-469-2298

Contact us: <u>https://www.audiocodes.com/corporate/offices-worldwide</u> Website: <u>https://www.audiocodes.com</u>

©2021 AudioCodes Ltd. All rights reserved. AudioCodes, AC, HD VoIP, HD VoIP Sounds Better, IPmedia, Mediant, MediaPack, What's Inside Matters, OSN, SmartTAP, User Management Pack, VMAS, VoIPerfect, VoIPerfectHD, Your Gateway To VoIP, 3GX, VocaNom, AudioCodes One Voice, AudioCodes Meeting Insights, AudioCodes Room Experience and CloudBond are trademarks or registered trademarks of AudioCodes Limited. All other products or trademarks are property of their respective owners. Product specifications are subject to change without notice.

Document #: LTRT-09964

